Introduction

Thank you for purchasing SoftBank 840N.

- For proper handset use, read this guide.
- Accessible SoftBank services may vary by service area, subscription, etc.

SoftBank 840N is compatible with 3G network technology.

Notes

- · Copying this guide in whole or part without authorization is prohibited.
- · Content of this guide is subject to change without prior notice.
- Efforts have been made to ensure the accuracy and clarity of this guide. Please contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P. 15-51) about unclear or missing information.

- SoftBank 840N is referred to as "handset" in this guide.
- Most operation descriptions are based on default settings and begin in Standby.
- Sample screenshots* are provided for reference only. Actual handset windows, menus, etc. may differ in appearance.
- Key illustrations are simplified and differ in appearance from actual handset keys.
- "(Japanese)" appears next to functions or services which require Japanese ability to use.
- * Standby Display used in this guide is based on SoftBank 840N Petal Pink model. Design theme of Main Menu and windows is based on default setting Vesper.

| | Getting Started |
|--------------|--|
| | Basic Operations |
| ē | Calling |
| 1 | Security |
| \checkmark | Mail |
| | Internet |
| © " | Camera |
| | |
| | TV |
| | Music Player & S! App |
| | |
| | Music Player & S! App |
| | Music Player & S! App Entertainment |
| | Music Player & S! App Entertainment Tools |
| | Music Player & S! App Entertainment Tools Data Management |

Appendix

| Getting Started |
|-------------------------|
| Basic Operations |
| Calling |
| Security |
| Mail |
| Internet |
| Camera |
| TV |
| Music Player & S! Appli |
| Entertainment |
| Tools |
| |

13

Search Guide

Function & Service Name Search

| Table of Contents | P. iv |
|-------------------|----------|
| Menu List | P. 15-20 |
| Index | |

Display Indicators



Learning Basics

P. 2-2 - P. 2-7

Solving Problems

| Troubleshooting | P. 15-6 |
|--------------------------------|---------|
| Warranty & After Sales Service | |

Objective Search



My Number & E-mail Address



Customizing Handset

840N Features

SoftBank Mobile Features

| | Basic Operations | Text Entry | Messaging Services | Mobile Internet |
|--|------------------------------------|--|------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| | Learn basic menu navigation | Enter text for composing | Use SMS and S! Mail to send | Use Yahoo! Keitai to access |
| | and key operations. | messages, creating Phone Book | text messages. Attach and send | Mobile Internet sites tailored for |
| | | entries, etc. | files via S! Mail. | SoftBank customers. |
| | P. 2-2 | P. 2-10 | P. 5-2 | P. 6-2 |
| | My Phone Number | My Account Details | Customize E-mail Address | Exchange Information Wirelessly |
| | Check your phone number on | Save your contact information | Change the account name (part | Send your e-mail address to |
| | handset. | to Account Details to send it to your friends. | before @) of your e-mail address. | compatible devices via infrared. |
| | P. 1-21 | P. 1-21 | P. 14-16 | P. 13-2 |
| | Download Music | Set Ringtones | Wallpaper | Add Shortcuts |
| | Download songs from | Set your favorite songs as | Set your favorite image to appear | Add frequently used functions |
| | Chaku-Uta® sites and set as | ringtones. | in Standby with clock or calendar. | to Desktop Icons. |
| | ringtones or play back on Music | | | |
| | Player. P. 9-4 | P. 14-8 | P. 14-3 | P. 2-3 |
| | Music Player | Camera & Video Camera | TV | Schedule |
| | Download songs and play them | Shoot still images and videos. | Handset supports One Seg | Manage your schedule on |
| | on handset. | | Digital TV. | handset calendar. |
| | | | | |
| | P. 9-2 | P. 7-2 | P. 8-2 | P. 11-4 |
| | Yahoo! Keitai Sites | Graphic Mail | Gaming Device | S! Quick News |
| | A special portal site for SoftBank | Create HTML messages by | Play S! Appli games downloaded | Subscribe to News and receive |
| | handsets enhances your Internet | changing font and background | from Yahoo! Keitai sites. | automatic updates regularly. |
| | browsing experience. | colors, inserting images, etc. | D 0.7 | P 40.3 |
| | P. 6-3 | P. 5-3 | P. 9-7 | P. 10-2 |

Table of Contents

| Search Guideii | 3 Calling |
|--|----------------------------------|
| Fable of Contentsiv Package Contentsvi | Overview 3-2 |
| ackage contents vi | Voice Call |
| General Notes xiii | Video Call 3-3 |
| ntellectual Property Rights xvii | Call Logs 3-10 |
| | Speed Dialing |
| Getting Started | Calling While Abroad |
| | (Global Roaming) 3-13 |
| Handset Parts 1-2 | Optional Services 3-14 |
| Display 1-6 | Advanced Features |
| USIM Card 1-10 | Advanced reatures |
| Battery & Charger 1-13 | A consistent |
| Power On/Off 1-17 | 4 Security |
| Mobile Manners 1-19 | PIN Settings 4-2 |
| Codes 1-20 | Prohibiting Unauthorized Handset |
| Other Basic Information 1-21 | Use 4-3 |
| 2 | Prohibiting Outgoing/Incoming |
| 2 Basic Operations | Calls 4-5 |
| Menu Operations 2-2 | Secret Modes 4-6 |
| Multitask 2-8 | |
| Text Entry 2-10 | 5 Mail |
| Phone Book 2-18 | |
| S! Addressbook Back-up 2-24 | Overview 5-2 |
| Advanced Features 2-26 | Sending Messages 5-3 |
| | |

Receiving & Opening Messages 5-9

Handling Messages 5-12 Advanced Features 5-17

Internet

| Overview | 6-2 |
|-------------------------|------|
| Yahoo! Keitai | 6-3 |
| PC Site Browser | 6-5 |
| Page Operations | 6-7 |
| Bookmarks & Saved Pages | 6-9 |
| Advanced Features | ō-11 |
| | |

Camera

| Overview | 7-2 |
|------------------------|-------------|
| Capturing Still Images | 7-5 |
| Recording Videos | 7-7 |
| Various Features | 7-9 |
| Advanced Features | /-12 |

TV

| About TV | 8-2 |
|----------------------------|-----|
| Watching TV | 8-5 |
| Recording/Playing Programs | |
| View/Record Timer | |
| Advanced Features | |
| | |

Music Player & S! Appli

| About Music Player | 9-2 | |
|--------------------|-----|--|
| Music Playback | 9-5 | |

Table of Contents

| | oli nced Features | |
|--------|----------------------|------|
| 10 | Entertainment | |
| S! Qui | ck News | 10-2 |

| S! Quick News | 10-2 |
|-------------------|------|
| S! Info Channel | 10-3 |
| S! Contents Store | 10-5 |
| Advanced Features | 10-6 |

11 Tools

| Life History Viewer | . 11-2 |
|---------------------|--------|
| Schedule | . 11-4 |
| To Do List | . 11-7 |
| Text Memo | . 11-9 |
| Voice Memo | 11-10 |
| Calculator | 11-11 |
| Alarm | 11-12 |
| Bar Code Reader | 11-14 |
| Text Reader | 11-16 |
| Advanced Features | 11-19 |

12 Data Management

| About Data Folder | 12-2 |
|-------------------|------|
| Accessing Files | 12-3 |
| Editing Files | 12-7 |

| File & Folder Management | . 12-9 |
|--------------------------|--------|
| About Memory Card | 12-10 |
| Managing Memory Cards | 12-11 |
| Advanced Features | 12-14 |

13 Connectivity

| Infrared | 13- |
|------------------|-----|
| Connecting to PC | |

14 Customization

| Clock, Display & Sounds | . 14-2 |
|-------------------------|--------|
| Phone Book & Calls | 14-12 |
| Mail | 14-16 |
| Internet | 14-19 |
| TV | 14-21 |
| Camera | 14-23 |
| S! Appli | 14-24 |
| Entertainment | 14-25 |
| Other Settings | 14-27 |

15 Appendix

| Multitask Combinations | 15-2 |
|------------------------------|-------|
| Software Update | 15-4 |
| Troubleshooting | 15-6 |
| Text Entry Key Assignments 1 | 15-10 |

| Kuten Code List | 15-13 |
|------------------------|-------|
| Weather Indicators | 15-19 |
| Menu List | 15-20 |
| Specifications | 15-34 |
| Index | 15-39 |
| Warranty & After Sales | |
| Service | 15-50 |
| Customer Service | 15-51 |

Package Contents

The following items are included in the package with handset.

For additional information on accessories, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P. 15-51).

■ Battery (NEBAH1)



- Quick Start Guide (Japanese)
- Safety Precautions (Japanese)
- Warranty (Handset)
- SoftBank 840N supports microSD™ memory cards. Purchase a memory card to use related functions.
- Use only specified AC charger (sold separately) to charge handset.

Safety Precautions

- To ensure proper use of your handset, read these safety precautions carefully before use.
 Keep this guide for future reference.
- Observe these safety precautions to prevent injuries and damages to property.
- SoftBank accepts no liability for any loss or damages incurred by you or a third party as a result of missed calls, etc., due to malfunction, erroneous operation or failure of this product.

Labels

Risks of injury or damage from improper use are categorized by levels. Understand these labels before reading this guide.

| ⚠ DANGER | Great risk of death or serious injury ¹ from improper use |
|-----------------|--|
| ⚠WARNING | Risk of death or serious injury ¹ from improper use |
| ⚠CAUTION | Risk of injury ² or damage to property ³ from improper use |

1 Serious injury includes: Loss of eyesight, physical injury, high temperature burns, low temperature burns (blisters or reddening caused by prolonged contact with a heat source higher than body temperature), electric shock, fractures, poisoning and other

- conditions requiring hospitalization or longterm treatment.
- 2 Injury includes: Physical burns (hightemperature and low-temperature), electric shock, and other conditions not requiring hospitalization or long-term treatment.
- 3 Damage to property includes: Incidental damage to structures and household property and/or to pets and livestock.

Symbols

Make sure you understand the following symbols and precautions before reading this guide.

| and precaditions before reading this galac. | | | |
|---|--|--|--|
| \Diamond | Action is prohibited. | | |
| ® | Disassembly is prohibited. | | |
| | Exposure to liquids is prohibited. | | |
| 8 | Handling with wet hands is prohibited. | | |
| 0 | Action is compulsory. | | |
| | Unplug power cord. | | |

Handset, Battery, USIM Card, AC Charger (Sold Separately), Desktop Holder (Sold Separately), Memory Card (Not Included), and Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable (Sold Separately)

⚠ DANGER



Use SoftBank specified devices (Battery, AC Charger or Desktop Holder) only.

Use of non-specified devices may cause Battery to leak, overheat, rupture or ignite; or may cause Charger to overheat, ignite or malfunction.



Do not disassemble/modify/ solder handset.

May cause fire, injury, electric shock or malfunction. Also, Battery may leak, overheat, rupture or ignite. Modifying handset is a violation of the Radio Law and subject to penalty.



Keep liquids away from handset.

If handset and/or battery is not dried after exposure to fluids (water, pet urine etc.), overheating, electric shock, fire, malfunction, etc. may occur.



Do not charge, use or leave handset in places subject to high temperatures (near an open flame or heating equipment, in direct sunlight or inside a car on a hot day).

May cause deformation or malfunction; or may cause Battery to leak, overheat, ignite or rupture. Also, the outer housing may become hot resulting in burns.



Do not use excessive force to attach Battery, AC Charger or Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable to handset. Battery or AC Charger may be the wrong way around.

Battery may leak, overheat, rupture or ignite.

WARNING



Do not place handset, Battery, AC Charger, Desktop Holder or Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable in a microwave oven or pressure cooker, or on an induction cooktop.

May cause Battery to leak, overheat, rupture or ignite; or may cause handset, AC Charger or Desktop Holder to overheat, emit smoke, ignite or malfunction.



Turn off handset when entering gas stations or other places where flammable gases (propane gas, gasoline, etc.) generate. Do not charge battery in such places.

Gases may ignite. Using handset near petrochemicals or other flammables may cause fire or explosion.



Do not drop/throw handset or expose it to excessive shock.

May cause battery to leak, overheat, rupture or ignite; or may cause fire, electric shock or malfunction.



If you notice an unusual sound, odor, smoke, etc. while using, charging or storing handset, immediately:

- 1. Unplug AC Charger from outlet.
- 2. Turn handset power off.
- 3. Remove Battery from handset, being careful of burn or injury. Continued use may cause fire or electric shock.



Keep liquids (water, pet urine, etc.) and conductive materials (e.g. pencil lead, metal fragments, metal necklaces, hairpins, etc.) away from Charger Terminals, External Device Port or Memory Card Slot.

May cause short circuit, resulting in fire or malfunction.

ACAUTION



Do not place handset on an uneven or unstable surface.

Handset may fall, leading to injuries or handset malfunction. Be particularly careful while charging or when vibrator is activated.



Keep handset out of reach of infants.

Failing to do so may result in small parts being accidentally swallowed or may cause injury.



When a child uses handset, parent supervision is advised. Provide child with proper instructions.

Failing to do so may cause injury, etc.



Do not store handset in humid or dusty places or in places subject to high temperatures.

May cause malfunction.



Be careful not to pinch your fingers in the hinge when opening handset.

Failing to do so may cause injury.

Handling Battery

A DANGER

Check battery type on Battery label. Properly use and dispose of Battery according to type.

| Label | Battery type |
|----------|--------------|
| Li-ion00 | Lithium-ion |



Do not throw Battery into a fire.

May cause Battery to leak, rupture or ignite.



Do not puncture Battery with a nail, hit it with a hammer, step on it or subject it to strong impact.

May cause Battery to leak, overheat, rupture or ignite.



Keep metal objects (pins, etc.) away from Battery Terminals. Do not carry or store conductive materials (e.g. pencil lead, metal fragments, metal necklaces, hairpins, etc.) together with Battery.

May cause Battery to leak, overheat, rupture or ignite.



If battery fluid gets into eyes, immediately rinse with clean water and consult a doctor. Do not rub eves.

Failing to do so may result in loss of evesiaht.

↑ WARNING



If battery fluid gets on your skin or clothing, immediately stop handset use and rinse with clean water.

Battery fluid may harm your skin.



If Battery is not fully charged even after specified charging time, stop charging.

Battery may leak, overheat, rupture or ignite.



If you notice an unusual odor, overheating, discoloration, deformation, etc. while using, charging or storing Battery, remove it from handset and keep it away from fire. Be careful not to burn or injure vourself.

Battery may leak, overheat, rupture or ignite.



If Battery leaks, immediately stop using it and keep it away from fire.

Battery fluid is flammable and could ignite, causing fire or Battery to rupture.



If any abnormalities (deformation, scratches, etc.) are visible on Battery. immediately discontinue use.

May cause Battery to leak, overheat, rupture, ignite; may cause handset malfunction or fire.



Do not allow pets to bite Batterv.

May cause Battery to leak, overheat, rupture, ignite; may cause handset malfunction or fire.

A CAUTION



Do not dispose of batteries as municipal waste.

Bring used batteries to a SoftBank Shop or recycling center after insulating the terminals with tape. Be sure to observe local regulations on battery disposal.

Handling Handset

⚠ WARNING



Do not use while operating a vehicle (car, motorcycle, bicvcle, etc.)

May cause a traffic accident. Use of a mobile phone while driving is prohibited by law, and is subject to penalty. Stop vehicle in a safe location (where parking is allowed) before using handset.



Keep handset power off near high precision electronic devices or devices using weak signals.

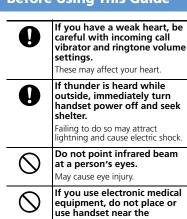
> Handset may cause these devices to malfunction

Devices that may be affected: Hearing aids, implanted cardiac pacemakers, implanted defibrillators and other electronic medical equipment; fire alarms, automatic doors and other automatic control devices.



Keep handset power off aboard an aircraft.

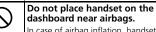
Handset signal may interfere with aircraft operation. Handset use aboard an aircraft may be subject to penalty. When in-flight use is permitted, observe airline instructions.





volume accordingly. Sound at high volume may impair hearing; or surrounding sounds may become inaudible over playback volume, resulting in an accident.

games or music, adjust



In case of airbag inflation, handset may hit passengers resulting in injury, malfunction or breakage.

If Display or Camera Lens is damaged, be careful of broken glass pieces or exposed internal components.

> Shatter-proof film prevents Display and Camera lens from shattering: however glass fragments and components may cause injury.

Do not allow fluids, metal pieces or flammable materials to enter USIM Card Slot or Memory Card Slot.

> May cause fire, electric shock or malfunction

ACAUTION

If skin abnormality occurs with use of handset, immediately discontinue use and consult a doctor.

Handset contains metals. Depending on your physical condition, you may experience itchiness, rash, etc.



Keep magnetic cards away from handset and make sure that a magnetic card is not trapped when closing handset.

Failing to do so may cause magnetic data on a cash card. credit card, telephone card or floppy disk to be lost.

Do not swing handset by its strap, etc.

Handset may strike you or other people; Strap may break causing injury, handset malfunction or breakage.

Handset may become hot during prolonged use.

Skin contact for extended period may cause low-temperature burns.

Do not bring speaker close to the ear when making calls in handsfree mode or when ring tone/melody is playing. May impair your hearing.

Be careful when opening/ closing handset.

May pinch fingers/Strap, causing injury or damage.



Watch TV with adequate lighting and distance from Display.

Failing to do so may impair eyesight.



Do not turn volume up too high when using earphones.

Using earphones for extended periods at high volume may impair hearing or harm your ears.



If Display breaks, do not inhale or touch liquid crystal fluid. If fluid enters your eyes or mouth, immediately rinse with clean water and consult a doctor. If fluid adheres to your skin or clothing, immediately wipe off with alcohol and wash with soap and water.

May result in loss of eyesight or skin damage.



Keep magnetized objects away from handset.

May cause operation errors.

■ Handling USIM Card

ACAUTION



Be careful handling the Notch when removing USIM Card.

May injure your hands or fingers.

Handling AC Charger and Desktop Holder

AWARNING



Do not cover with clothing or bedding during charging.

Heat may build up resulting in fire or malfunction.



Use the specified power supply and voltage.

Failing to do so may cause fire or malfunction.

AC Charger: 100 to 240 V AC (for household AC outlets only)

Also, do not use commercially available voltage converters. May cause fire, electric shock or malfunction.



Unplug AC Charger from outlet before extended periods of handset disuse.

Failing to do so may cause electric shock, fire or malfunction.

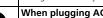


If liquid (water, pet urine, etc.) gets into AC Charger, immediately unplug AC Charger from outlet.

Failing to do so may cause electric shock, smoke emission or fire.



If dust accumulates on AC Charger plug, unplug Charger from outlet and wipe with a dry cloth. Failing to do so may cause fire.



When plugging AC Charger into outlet, keep conductive materials (pencil lead, metal parts, necklaces, hair pins, etc.) away from Desktop Holder terminals, AC Charger plug/terminals and plug Charger firmly into outlet.

Failing to do so may cause electric shock, short circuit, fire, etc.



Do not touch AC Charger with wet hands.

May cause electric shock or malfunction.



If thunder is heard, do not touch AC Charger.

May cause electric shock.



Do not use AC Charger if the cord is damaged.

May cause electric shock, overheating or fire.



Do not use AC Charger and Desktop Holder in humid places such as in bathrooms.

May cause electric shock.



Do not short-circuit Charger Terminals when Charger is plugged into an outlet. Do not touch Charger Terminals with your fingers, etc.

May cause fire, malfunction, electric shock or injury.



Do not place heavy objects on the cord of AC Charger.

May cause electric shock or fire.

A CAUTION



When AC Charger is connected to an outlet, do not pull on cord or otherwise subject Charger to strong shock.

May cause injury or malfunction.



Firmly hold plug and unplug AC Charger from outlet before cleaning.

> Failing to do so may cause electric shock



Do not unplug AC Charger by pulling the cord. Firmly hold plug and unplug AC Charger.

Pulling the cord may damage the cord resulting in electric shock or fire.



Do not charge a wet battery.

May cause battery to overheat. ignite or rupture.



Unplug Charger from outlet when charging is complete. Failing to do so may cause fire or malfunction.



Do not touch Charger Terminals of Desktop Holder when plugged into an AC outlet. May cause low-temperature burns. Radio Industries and Businesses, March 2001).

Electromagnetic Waves from Mobile Phones and Other Devices" (Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference Japan, April 1997), and "Research Report on the Influence of Electromagnetic Waves on Medical Equipment" (Association of

Near Electronic Medical Equipment

This section is based on "Guidelines on

Safeguarding Medical Equipment from

⚠ WARNING



Keep handset a minimum of 22 centimeters from implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator.

Radio waves may interfere with the operation of implanted cardiac pacemakers or implanted defibrillators.



When using electronic medical equipment other than implanted cardiac pacemakers/defibrillators outside of medical institutions, consult device manufacturer about the influence of radio waves.

Radio waves may interfere with the operation of electronic medical equipment.



Observe the following in medical institutions. Radio waves from handset may affect electronic medical equipment.

- Do not bring mobile phones into an operating room, ICU (Intensive Care Unit) or CCU (Coronary Care Unit).
- Turn off mobile phones in hospital wards. Disable auto power-on functions (alarm, etc.) before turning off mobile phones.
- Turn off mobile phones even in lobbies or areas where use is permitted if there is electronic medical equipment nearby.
- Observe the instructions of individual medical institutions and do not use or bring mobile phones into prohibited areas.



Keep handset power off in crowded places such as rush hour trains; a person with an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator may be nearby. Disable auto power-on functions (alarm, etc.) before turning off mobile phones.

Radio waves may interfere with the operation of implanted cardiac pacemakers or implanted defibrillators.

General Notes

Usage Basics

- Handset use may be disrupted when out of range or signal is weak. Calls/TV image may be suddenly cut off when moving to a place with poor signal reception (e.g. inside/next to a tall building, in a tunnel, underground or in mountainous areas).
- Take care not to disturb other people when using handset in public places.
- If you receive a call while walking, move to a safe place before answering.
- Back up important data. SoftBank accepts no liability for damages arising from loss/ alteration of handset/memory card data (Phone Book, image/sound files, etc.) due to accident or malfunction.
- Handset is a wireless station under Japanese Radio Law. You may be requested to submit your handset for inspection based on this law.
- Handset use near landlines, TVs or radios may cause interference. Move away from devices to avoid interference.
- Beware of eavesdropping. Handset employs a digital signal that provides a high level of privacy protection. However, the possibility of eavesdropping by a third party using special means cannot be ruled out.
 Eavesdropping>

Interception of radio signals by a third party during communication, either intentionally or accidentally

- Do not trap Strap or other objects when opening and closing handset. Doing so may cause malfunction or damage handset.
- Using handset on trains or other public transportation may affect their electronic devices.
- A call may not be connected or you may hear noises:
 - In an extremely cold place (e.g. freezer storehouse) where handset may not operate normally
 - Near metal furniture which may interfere with signal transmission
 - Near electromagnetic sources or magnetized items, including electric products, audiovisual equipment and office appliances (e.g. computer, microwave oven, speaker, TV set, radio, fax machine, fluorescent lamp, word processor, electric kotatsu, inverter-driven air conditioner, electromagnetic cooker)
- If Battery appears deformed or scratched from external impact, contact Customer Assistance.
- When using handset for the first time or after an extended period of disuse, charge Battery beforehand.
- Battery operating time varies by the usage environment and Battery condition.
- Do not charge Battery:
 - In a humid/dusty place or near sources of vibration
 - · Near landlines, TVs or radios
- Although AC Charger may become warm while charging, it is not a malfunction.

- Do not subject handset to excessive shock. Do not deform Charger Terminals. Doing so may cause malfunction.
- When Battery life nears its end, it may expand slightly. This is not a malfunction.
- Keep handset away from strong magnetic force. May cause malfunction.
- Do not scratch Display with metal objects, etc.
 Doing so may damage Display resulting in malfunction or breakage.

Inside Cars

- Do not use handset while driving. Doing so may compromise safe driving and cause an accident. Handset operation in a car may be punishable by law.
- Before using handset, stop the car in a safe place.
- Handset use may affect electronics in some car models. Confirm with your car dealer whether sufficient magnetic protection measures are implemented in your car. Failing to do so may compromise safe driving.

Handling

- Keep away from liquids and moisture. Handset, Battery, AC Charger, Desktop Holder, Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable and USIM Card are not waterproof. Do not use these devices in the rain or in other humid places (e.g. bathrooms). When carrying handset near your body (pockets, etc.), moisture from sweat may corrode internal parts and cause malfunction. Damage caused by exposure to liquids or moisture is not covered by the warranty and may be irreparable.
- Handset's color LCD may be treated with special coating for enhanced visibility. To avoid scratching Display, clean handset carefully using a dry, soft cloth (e.g. eyeglass cloth). If moisture or soil is left on Display, the coating may stain or peel off. Do not use alcohol, thinner, benzene or detergent, as it may cause discoloration and remove printed logos.
- Clean Terminals with a dry cotton swab. Soiled Terminals may cause poor contact, resulting in insufficient charging or handset to turn off.
- Do not place handset near an air conditioner vent. Condensation may form due to abrupt temperature changes, leading to internal corrosion and malfunction.
- Do not apply excessive force to handset and Battery. Placing handset in an overpacked bag or sitting down with handset in your pocket may damage Display, Internal Circuit Board or

- Battery, and cause malfunction. Doing so with external device connected to External Device Port may damage connector, leading to malfunction.
- Although handset becomes warm during use or charging, it is not a malfunction.
- Do not leave the Camera Lens exposed to direct sunlight. Doing so may discolor or burn Optical Element.
- Do not affix thick stickers or labels to the Display or Keypad side. Doing so may result in malfunction.
- Do not leave Battery uninstalled or uncharged for an extended period of time; may alter or erase saved settings and data. SoftBank accepts no liability for any damages resulting from such loss or alteration.
- Do not store depleted Battery; may degrade performance and shorten Battery life.
- Keep the covers of External Device Port and Memory Card Slot closed. Dust or water inside handset may cause malfunction.
- When removing Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable or AC Charger from External Device Port, do not pull the cord, hold the connector. Pulling the cord may result in wire breakage or malfunction.
- If you use an outlet with pullout prevention feature, refer to the instruction manual of the outlet.
- Avoid extremely cold and high temperatures. Use handset at an ambient temperature of 5 to 35 °C, and humidity of 45 to 85 %. If handset is left in an extremely hot place, handset may power off automatically.

- Battery time varies by conditions of use; however when operation time becomes extremely short even after a full charge, purchase a new Battery. Use only specified battery.
- Charge Battery at an ambient temperature of 5 to 35 °C.
- Do not insert USIM Card with labels or stickers affixed to it. May cause malfunction.
- When connecting an external device, do not insert connector into External Device Port at an angle. When external device is connected, do not pull the cord.
- Do not use handset without Battery Cover.
 Battery may dislodge and result in malfunction or breakage.

Camera

Creating public disturbances from using handset may be subject to penalties based on applicable laws and regulations (e.g. nuisance prevention ordinance by municipal governments).

Copyrights

Copyrighted materials, such as music, images, computer programs and databases, and their respective copyright holders are protected by copyright laws. Duplication of copyrighted materials is permitted only for individual or home use. Duplications (including data conversion), modifications, transfers or network distributions of copyrighted materials for purposes other than stated above without permission of the copyright holders constitute an infringement of copyrights and violation of copyright holders' rights, potentially causing claims for reparations or criminal punishment.

Always observe applicable copyright laws when making copies using handset and recording materials using handset camera.

The software installed in this handset is a copyrighted material and involves copyrights and human rights of copyright holders which are protected by copyright laws. Do not duplicate, modify, alter, detach from the hardware, disassemble, decompile or reverse-engineer the software in whole or in part by yourself, nor allow any third party to do the same, either.

Functional Limitations

After handset upgrade, subscription cancellation or long periods of handset disuse, TV becomes unavailable.

Caution

Do not use handset if it has been altered. Using an altered device is a violation of the Radio Law. This handset is certified to conform to the technical standards for specific radio equipment based on the Radio Law, and Technical Conformity Mark is printed on the model name seal as certification. If you remove screws and make alterations inside of handset, the technical standards conformity certification becomes invalid. Do not use handset with the certification invalid, as it is a violation of the Radio Law.

SAR Certification Information

840N meets the technical standards set by the Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications (MIC) regarding radio wave absorption by a human body.

These technical standards have been established on a scientific basis to prevent radio waves emitted from wireless devices such as mobile phones from affecting human health. These standards require that the SAR (Specific Absorption Rate), an indicator of the amount of average radio frequency energy absorbed in the side of a human head, must not exceed 2 W/kg*. This value includes a substantial safety margin to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and physical size. The value is equal to the international guideline recommended by the International Commission on Non-lonizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP) that has a

cooperative relationship with the World Health Organization (WHO).

* The technical standards are stipulated in the Radio Law (Article 14-2 of Ordinance Regulating Radio Equipment).

The highest SAR value is 0.552 W/kg for 840N. This value was obtained in accordance with the MIC testing procedure with handset transmitting at its highest permitted power level. While there may be differences in SAR levels for various handsets, they all meet the MIC's permissible value. Because mobile phones are designed to operate at their minimum power level required to communicate with base stations, the actual SAR of handset during a call is usually below the highest value.

- For more information about SAR, see the following websites:
- Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications (MIC)
- http://www.tele.soumu.go.jp/e/sys/ele/index.htm
- Association of Radio Industries and Businesses (ARIB)

http://www.arib-emf.org/ (Japanese)

SoftBank's Body SAR Policy

- Body SAR: Value obtained from continuously talking with handset placed on the body using earphone-microphone at maximum transmission power.
- Specific Absorption Rate (SAR): Value obtained from talking continuously for six minutes.

 Placement on the body: Measurements are taken with the rear of handset facing the body at a distance of 1.5 cm as the standard handset position. In order to comply with radio frequency exposure requirements, use an accessory (e.g. belt clip, holster) that does not contain metallic parts to maintain a 1.5 cm separation between the body and handset.

For more information, see SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (Japanese):

http://www.softbankmobile.co.jp/ja/info/public/emf/emf02.html

European RF Exposure Information

840N is a radio transmitter and receiver. This product has been confirmed not to exceed the limits recommended by international guidelines for radio frequency.

These guidelines were developed by the independent scientific organization International Commission on Non-lonizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP) and include a substantial safety margin to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health.

The influence on the human body of radio waves emitted from mobile phones is measured employing a unit known as the Specific Absorption Rate (SAR). The SAR limit for mobile devices is 2 W/kg. The maximum SAR value for this model handset, when placed on the ear, is 0.544W/kg. As mobile devices offer a range of functions, they can be used in other positions, such as on the body as described in SoftBank's

Body SAR Policy. In this case, the maximum SAR value is 0.281W/kg*.

Since the SAR is measured at the highest transmitting power level, the actual SAR during a call is usually much lower. This is because mobile phones are designed to operate at their minimum power levels necessary to communicate with base stations.

The World Health Organization (WHO) has stated that present scientific information about mobile phone use does not indicate any adverse effects on the human body. They recommend limiting talk time or using a handsfree device to keep the mobile phone away from the head and body to reduce influence of exposure to radio waves. Additional information can be found at the WHO website:

http://www.who.int/emf

 Measurements with handset placed on the body are carried out in accordance with the FCC standards. The values are based on European requirements.

Declaration of Conformity

C€0168

840N is declared to conform with the essential requirements of European Union Directive 1999/5/EC Radio and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment Directive 3.1(a), 3.1(b) and 3.2

The Declaration of Conformity can be found on the following website:

http://www.n-keitai.com/

Minding Mobile Manners

Use your handset responsibly. Inappropriate handset use can be both dangerous and bothersome. Take care not to disturb others when using your handset. Adjust handset use according to your surroundings.

- Turn handset power off in theaters, museums and other places where silence is the norm.
- Refrain from use in restaurants, lobbies, elevators, etc.
- Observe signs and instructions regarding handset use aboard trains, etc.
- Refrain from use that interrupts the flow of pedestrian or vehicle traffic.

Intellectual Property Rights

- Duplicating, modifying or publicly transmitting. copyright-protected contents (e.g. text, images, music, software) photographed or downloaded from websites without the permission of the copyright holders is prohibited by copyright laws, with the exception that the duplication or quotation of those is made only for personal use. Shooting or recording a demonstration. performance or exhibition may be prohibited in some cases even if it is for personal use. Shooting a photo of a person using this product without his or her permission, or posting a photo of a person you shot on websites without his or her permission may constitute an infringement of portrait rights.
- S! Appli, S! Mail and Graphic Mail are registered trademarks or trademarks of SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.
- SOFTBANK, SOFTBANK's equivalent in Japanese and the SOFTBANK logo are registered trademarks or trademarks of SOFTBANK CORP. in Japan and other countries
- Yahoo! and the "Yahoo!" or "Y!" logos are trademarks and/or registered trademarks of Yahoo! Inc. in the U.S.
- T9[®] is trademarks and/or registered trademarks of Nuance Communications, Inc. and/or its affiliates in the United States and/or other countries.

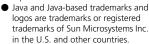
 microSD™ is a trademark of the SD Card Association.



- This product is licensed complying with MPEG-4 Visual Patent Portfolio License, and you are permitted to use personally and for the nonprofit purpose in the following situations:
 - To record a movie based on the standard of MPEG-4 Visual (MPEG-4 Video)
 - To play MPEG-4 Video recorded by the consumer engaged in the nonprofit activities
 - To play MPEG-4 Video provided by the provider licensed by MPEG-LA
 When you use it for other purposes, such as promotion, in-house information and profit activity, contact the U.S. corporation MPEG LA, LLC.
- This product contains Adobe® Flash® Lite™ technology by Adobe Systems Incorporated. Copyright® 1996-2010 Adobe Systems Incorporated. All rights reserved. Adobe, Flash and Flash Lite are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/ or other countries.
- QR code is a registered trademark of Denso Wave Inc.
- Powered by JBlend™ Copyright 2002 -2010 Aplix Corporation. All rights reserved.
 JBlend and JBlend-related trademarks are trademarks or



registered trademarks of Aplix Corporation in Japan and other countries.





- Chaku-Uta[®] and Chaku-Uta Full[®] are trademarks and/or registered trademarks of Sony Music Entertainment (Japan) Inc. in Japan and/or other countries.
- This product contains NetFront
 Browser and NetFront
 Messaging Client software of
 ACCESS CO., LTD.
 Copyright® 2004-2010 ACCESS CO., LTD.
 ACCESS and NetFront are trademarks or registered trademarks of ACCESS CO., LTD. in Japan and other countries.
 This software is based in part on the work of the Independent JPEG Group.
- This product is equipped with IrFront by ACCESS CO., LTD.
 2008 ACCESS CO., LTD. All rights reserved.
 ACCESS and IrFront are trademarks or registered trademarks of ACCESS CO., LTD. in Japan and other countries.
- MULTITASK, Privacy angle and NEC SUPER TOWN are trademarks or registered trademarks of NEC CASIO Mobile Communications, Ltd. in Japan.
- This product is equipped with the font FontAvenue product by NEC Corporation.

- Powered By Mascot Capsule[®]/Micro3D Edition™ MASCOT CAPSULE[®] are registered trademarks of HI CORPORATION.
- G-GUIDE, G-GUIDE MOBILE and their logos are trademarks or registered trademarks in Japan of U.S. Gemstar-TV Guide International, Inc. and/or its affiliates.
- IrSimple™, IrSS™ or IrSimpleShot™ are trademarks of Infrared Data Association®.



- Hyper Clear Voice is commercially available based on the license for SRS VIP+ technology from SRS Labs, Inc. SRS, VIP+, and the symbol are trademarks of SRS Labs, Inc.
- Dialog Clarity and WOW technologies are industrialized based on the license from SRS Labs, Inc.
 Dialog Clarity, SRS, WOW and the are trademarks of SRS Labs, Inc.
- This product contains software licensed complying with GNU General Public License (GPL), GNU Lesser General Public License (LGPL), etc.
 - For more details, visit "GPL·LGPL等について" at
- http://www.n-keitai.com/guide/download/

 FrameSolid™ by Morpho, Inc. is used for the frame interpolation function.

 FrameSolid™ is a registered trademark of Morpho. Inc.
- PhotoSolid®, MovieSolid® and their logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Morpho, Inc. in Japan and other countries.

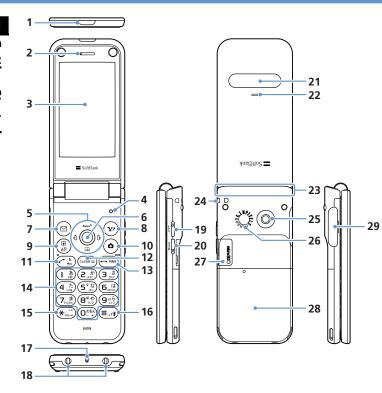
- Microsoft, Windows and Windows Vista are trademarks or registered trademarks in the United States or other countries of Microsoft Corporation (USA).
- Microsoft Windows Operating System is indicated in its abbreviated form as Windows.
- OS (Japanese) are abbreviated as follows in this quide.
 - Windows 7 is an abbreviation of Microsoft[®] Windows[®] 7 (Starter, Home Basic, Home Premium, Professional, Enterprise, Ultimate).
 - Windows Vista is an abbreviation of Windows Vista[®] (Home Basic, Home Premium, Business, Enterprise, Ultimate).
 - Windows XP is an abbreviation of Microsoft[®] Windows[®] XP Professional operating system or Microsoft[®] Windows[®] XP Home Edition operating system.
- The names of the companies, products and services used in this guide are registered trademarks or trademarks of the respective companies.

Getting Started

| Handset Parts | . 1-2 |
|---------------------------|--------|
| Basic Key Operations | 1-3 |
| Display | . 1-6 |
| Display Indicators | 1-6 |
| Sub-display | 1-8 |
| USIM Card | |
| Before Using USIM Card | . 1-10 |
| Other Notes on USIM Cards | |
| USIM PINs | . 1-11 |
| USIM Card Installation | . 1-12 |
| Battery & Charger | 1-13 |
| Notes on Charging Battery | |
| Battery Installation | . 1-13 |
| Charging Battery | . 1-15 |
| Power On/Off | 1-17 |
| Power On | . 1-17 |
| Power Off | . 1-17 |
| Mobile Manners | 1-19 |
| Minding Mobile Manners | . 1-19 |
| Activating Manner Mode | |
| | |

| Codes | 1-20 |
|-------------------------|------|
| About Codes | 1-20 |
| Security Code | 1-20 |
| Center Access Code | 1-20 |
| Network Password | 1-20 |
| Other Basic Information | 1-21 |
| Checking Battery Level | 1-21 |
| My Phone Number | 1-21 |
| Using Earphone | 1-21 |
| Side Key Guard | 1-22 |
| Using ECO Mode | 1-22 |
| | |





| | 1 | Infrared Port | | |
|---|----|-------------------------------|---|--|
| | 2 | Earpiece | | |
| | 3 | Display | | |
| | 4 | Light Sensor | | |
| | 5 | Multi Selector | \odot | |
| | 6 | Center Key | • | |
| | 7 | Mail Key | © © Ø @ @ @ @ @ @ @ @ @ @ @ @ @ @ @ @ @ | |
| | 8 | Yahoo! Keitai Key | (Y27) | |
| | 9 | Shortcut Key | @ | |
| | 10 | Camera Key | • | |
| | 11 | Send Key | | |
| | 12 | Clear/Back Key | CLEAR | |
| | 13 | Power/End Key | | |
| | 14 | Keypad | 0 - 9 | |
| | 15 | *Key | * | |
| | | #/Manner Key | # | |
| , | | Microphone | | |
| | | Charger Terminals | | |
| | | Volume up/Manner Key | A ₹#- | |
| | | Volume down/Music Key | Music | |
| | | Sub-display | | |
| | _ | Charging Indicator/Illuminati | on | |
| | | Internal Antenna | | |
| | | 24 Strap Eyelet | | |
| | | Camera | | |
| | | Speaker | | |
| | 27 | Memory Card Slot | | |
| | 28 | Battery Cover | | |
| | | | | |

29 External Device Port

Tip

- TV antenna is built into handset. For optimal signal reception, do not cover Internal Antenna with hands or anything else. Do not affix stickers over Internal Antenna.
- Key illustrations are simplified and differ in appearance from actual handset keys.

Basic Key Operations

In Standby

| No. | Key/Operations | Description |
|-----|------------------|--|
| 5 | • | Access Desktop Icons/Indicators. |
| | Press and hold 💍 | Open S! Quick News List. |
| | © | Open Phone Book Search menu. |
| | ⊙ | Open Received Calls window. |
| | Press and hold ⊙ | Open Received Address List. |
| | (S) | Open Redial window. |
| | Press and hold 🕞 | Open Sent Address List. |
| 6 | • | Open Main Menu. |
| 7 | | Open Mail menu. |
| | Press and hold 🖾 | Compose a new S! Mail. |
| 8 | Ø | Access Yahoo! Keitai portal. |
| | Press and hold 🕏 | Open Yahoo! menu. |
| 9 | ® | Activate function assigned to key (Itsumono-Mail is set by default). |
| | Press and hold ® | Assign a function to key. |
| 10 | • | Activate Camera (Photo Mode). |

| No. | Key/Operations | Description | |
|-----|----------------------|---|--|
| 11 | Z | Open Tomo-Den Window. | |
| 12 | CLEAR | Play messages on Answering Machine. | |
| | Press and hold CLEAR | Set/cancel Answering Machine. | |
| 13 | Press and hold 🗖 | Turn power on/off. | |
| 14 | Press and hold 5 | Set/cancel ECO Mode. | |
| | Press and hold 7 | Set font type, thickness and size. | |
| | Press and hold 8 | Set Privacy Angle on/off. | |
| | Press and hold O | Enter "+" (international access code). | |
| 16 | Press and hold # | Set/cancel Manner Mode. | |
| 19 | ∆ 77- | Increase earpiece volume. View clock (handset closed). | |
| | Press and hold | Set/cancel Manner Mode. | |
| 20 | Music | Decrease earpiece volume. | |
| | Press and hold Music | Activate Music Player (unavailable when battery is low). | |

During Voice Calls

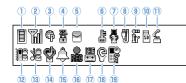
| No. | Key/Operations | Description |
|-----|----------------------|---|
| 5 | (5) | Open Phone Book Search Group menu. |
| | Press and hold 💍 | Continuously increase earpiece volume. |
| | © | Open Phone Book Search Column menu. |
| | Press and hold ② | Continuously decrease earpiece volume. |
| | € | Open Received Calls window. |
| | ③ | Open Redial window. |
| 7 | (2) | Turn handsfree on/off. |
| 8 | 9 | Toggle Hyper Clear Voice modes (High, OFF or Low). |
| 9 | (9) | Open Task Switch window. |
| 12 | CLEAR | Hold call. |
| 13 | | End call. |
| | Press and hold - | Turn power off. |
| 16 | Press and hold # | Set/cancel Manner Mode. |
| 19 | A ₇₇₋ | Increase earpiece volume. |
| 20 | Music | Decrease earpiece volume. |
| | Press and hold Music | Record other party's voice. |

During Text Entry

| No. | Key/Operations | Description |
|-----|------------------|---|
| 5 | © | Insert line feed 🕹 (when cursor is at the end of text). |
| | (| Add a space (when cursor is at the end of text). |
| 7 | <u> </u> | Toggle character entry modes (in 5-touch or T9 input mode). Toggle double-byte and single-byte characters (in 2-touch mode). |
| | Press and hold 🖾 | Toggle text input methods (in 5-touch, 2-touch or T9 input mode). |
| 8 | (Sp) | Open pictograph, symbol or emoticon lists. |
| | Press and hold 🏵 | Convert S! Mail to Graphic Mail. |
| 11 | | Cycle characters in reverse order (in 5-touch mode). |
| | Press and hold 🖊 | Undo last operation (conversion, pasting, cut, etc.) and return to the previous state. |

| No. | Key/Operations | Description |
|-----|----------------------|---|
| 12 | CLEAR | Delete one character to right of cursor. When cursor is at end of text, a character to left is deleted. |
| | Press and hold CLEAR | Delete all text to right of cursor. When cursor is at end of text, delete all text. |
| 15 | * | Enter dakuten (*) or handakuten (*) (in 5-touch, 2-touch or T9 input mode). Toggle case (in 5-touch or 2-touch mode). Insert line feed 🎍 |
| | Press and hold * | Select area. |
| 16 | # | Toggle Shift, Caps Lock and lower case modes (when entering alphanumerics in T9 input mode). |
| | Press and hold # | Paste copied or cut text. |

Display Indicators



- 1 Battery Level
- 2 Signal Strength
 - Out of Range
 - Emission OFF Mode
 - USIM Lock Active
- Packet Transmission Available (Yahoo! Keitai)
 - Packet Transmission in Progress (Yahoo! Keitai)
 - Packet Transmission Available (Dial-up Connection)
 - Packet Transmission in Progress (Dial-up Connection)
 - ¬ Packet Transmission in Progress (Sending/Receiving Data)
- 4 SSL Secured Site Connected

- 5 Unread S! Mail/SMS
 - Handset S! Mail/SMS Memory Full
 - USIM SMS Memory Full (when there are unread S! Mail/SMS Messages)
 - Handset S! Mail/SMS & USIM SMS Memory Full
- 🌀 占 Dial Lock Active
 - Original Lock Active
 - Secret Mode/Secret Data Only Mode
- Original Lock Active in Secret Mode/Secret Data Only Mode
- ア 🚜 Software Updated
 - Side Key Guard On
- 切 / □ USB Cable Connected (Communication/microSD Mode)
 - microSD Mode
 - Handsfree Device Connected (Communication/microSD Mode)
- (9) 🎢 Infrared Transmission
 - S! Addressbook Back-up Sync in Progress

- 10 Memory Card Inserted
 - Invalid Memory Card Inserted
 - Memory Card Reader/Writer in Use
 - Accessing Memory Card
- ⊕ Voice Call
 - Ч Video Call
 - Maximum Call Cost Limit Reached
- Vibration Set for Incoming Calls & Messages
 - Vibration Set for Incoming Calls/Messages
- 13 ⅓ No Ringtone for Incoming Calls & Messages
 - No Ringtone for Incoming Calls/Messages
- 14 Manner Mode
- 15 🗘 Alarm Set
 - Alarm Set for Today (appears prior to set time.)
- 🔞 💂 One Seg Timer Recording in Progress

- 17 New Messages at Voice Mail Center
 - Answering Machine On
 - New Voice Calls
 - New Video Calls
 - New Voice & Video Calls
- 18 🖗 ECO Mode
 - Privacy Angle On (when Backlight is Off)
- (9) Keypad Lock Active (After Closed or Timer is ON)

Tip

- To see indicator descriptions:

Sub-display



- 1 Battery Level
- 2 Munread Messages
 - Handset Message Memory Full
 - USIM SMS Memory Full
 - (when there are unread messages)
- Handset & USIM SMS Memory Full
- 3 W Manner Mode
- 4 Voice Call
 - **Ч** Video Call
- Packet Transmission Available (Yahoo! Keitai)
 - Packet Transmission in Progress (Yahoo! Keitai)
 - → / ▲ Packet Transmission in Progress (Sending/Receiving Data)
- 6 Till Signal Strength
 - Out of Range
 - k Emission OFF Mode

Animation

Handset status and new information appear on Sub-display.

Examples









Missed Call/ New Mail (S! Mail/SMS)





TV Timer Recording



Mail



Music Player

Tip

• Sub-display may be hard to see when outdoors or under strong light.





Style Mode Settings

- Set Display Design Collectively
- Check Style Mode Settings
- Edit Title of a Style
- Save Current Style Mode Settings as Favorite
- Change Each Item for Favorites
- Clear All Favorite Settings



Display Settings

- Wallpaper
- Show Calendar in Standby
- Set Wallpaper Image to Change When Handset Returns to Standby
- Display Color Scheme
- Battery Level Indicator/Signal Strength Indicator Design
- Interface Language
- Guard from Prying Eyes
- Set Effect for Screen Change

(P. 14-3)

Backlight

- Set Backlight & Power Saving
- Illuminate Display Only or Display and Keys
- Set Brightness of Backlight

(P. 14-5)

Standby Indicators

Enable Indicator Selector

(P. 14-7)

Sub-display

- Notifications/Animation
- Set Clock Pattern
- Set Messages to Appear
- Set Time Signal
- Set Viewable Time

(P. 14-8)

Closed Illumination

- Set Flashing Color for Handset Close
- Set Flashing Pattern for Handset Close

(P. 14-27)

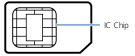
Before Using USIM Card

Universal Subscriber Identity Module (USIM) Card is an IC card that contains customer information (phone number, etc.). A USIM Card must be inserted to use your handset.

- Store Phone Book entries and SMS on USIM Card.
- Insert USIM Card into other USIM-compatible SoftBank handsets to use information on Card.
- Do not apply excessive force when inserting/removing USIM Card.
- SoftBank is not liable for any damage caused by inserting USIM Card into other IC card readers/writers.
- USIM Card may become warm during use. This is not a malfunction.
- Keep IC chip clean.
- For details, refer to the manual supplied with your USIM Card.
- Do not drop USIM Card or subject to excessive shock. Doing so may cause malfunction.
- Do not bend USIM Card or place heavy objects on it. Doing so may cause malfunction.
- Avoid extreme temperatures.
- Do not scratch, carelessly touch or short-circuit the IC chip.
 Doing so may result in data loss or malfunction.
- Clean USIM Card with a dry soft cloth (such as is used for eyeglasses).
- Use a SoftBank-designated USIM Card. Using a non-designated card may result in handset malfunction.

Other Notes on USIM Cards

- USIM Cards are the property of SoftBank.
- USIM Cards will be reissued for a fee if lost or damaged.
- Return USIM Cards to SoftBank upon cancellation or suspension of service.
- Returned USIM Cards are recycled.
- USIM Card specifications and performance may change without prior notice.
- Keep a separate copy of data saved on your USIM Card.
 SoftBank is not liable for lost data.
- If USIM Card or handset (with USIM Card inserted) is lost or stolen, suspend service immediately. For details, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P. 15-51).
- Downloaded files (S! Appli, videos, Saved Pages, etc.) saved to handset or memory card may be inaccessible after USIM Card replacement, handset upgrade or service subscription cancellation. If a different USIM Card is inserted, the cookies and cache are cleared to protect personal information.



USIM PINs

There are two security codes for USIM Cards: PIN1 and PIN2.

PIN1

PIN1 is a four- to eight-digit code to prevent unauthorized handset use by a third party.

- Default PIN1 is 9999.
- PIN1 can be changed (P. 4-2).
- When PIN1 Code Entry Set is set to ON, PIN1 must be entered each time handset is turned on to be used.

PIN₂

PIN2 is required to reset total call cost or to set a maximum limit to call costs.

- Default PIN2 is 9999.
- PIN2 can be changed (P. 4-2).

PIN Lock & Cancellation (PUK)

If PIN1 or PIN2 is incorrectly entered three times consecutively, PIN Lock is activated, limiting handset use to specific functions. Enter Personal Unblocking Key (PUK1/PUK2) to cancel PIN Lock.

 For information on PUK, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P. 15-51).

Note

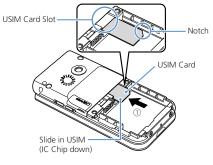
- If PIN1 is incorrectly entered three times, and then PUK is incorrectly entered 10 times, USIM Card locks and handset cannot be used.
- If PIN2 is incorrectly entered three times, and then PUK is incorrectly entered 10 times, operations that require PIN2 will become unusable.
- · Write down your PUK.
- To cancel USIM Card lock, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P. 15-51).

USIM Card Installation

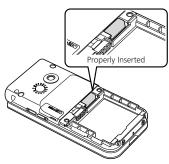
- Remove Battery (P. 1-14) before inserting or removing USIM Card.
- Be careful of notch when handling USIM Card. May injure your hands or fingers.

Insertion

1 Slide in USIM Card (IC chip facing down)

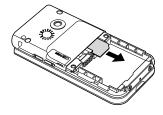


2 Push USIM Card in completely



Removal

1 Slide USIM Card out gently



Notes on Charging Battery

- Charge battery at least once every six months. If battery is left uncharged for a long period, it may become unusable or its operation time may decrease
- Avoid connecting too many things to one AC outlet. Doing so may cause the AC outlet to overheat and cause a fire.
- Battery and AC Charger may become warm during charging, but this is not a malfunction. If they become too hot, however, stop charging and contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, Customer Assistance (P. 15-51).
- If Charging Indicator flashes red during charging, battery may be faulty.
 Contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, Customer Assistance (P. 15-51).
- Depending on the conditions of usage, the battery may expand as it nears the end of its life. However, this presents no safety problems.
- Check the battery type on its label:

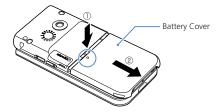
| Mark | Туре |
|------|---|
| | Lithium-ion battery Lithium-ion batteries are a recyclable resource. Do not dispose of them as municipal waste. Bring used batteries to your nearest SoftBank Shop or recycling center after insulating the terminals with tape. Observe local regulations on battery disposal. |

Battery Installation

• When installing Battery, make sure Battery is oriented correctly.

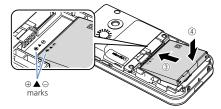
Inserti<u>on</u>

1 Press and slide Battery cover off



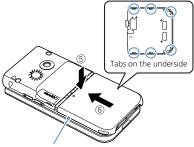
2 Insert Battery

Align $\oplus \blacktriangle \ominus$ marks on Battery and handset then slide Battery into place.



Battery & Charger

3 Replace cover



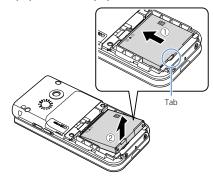
Align tabs with handset grooves and slide the cover shut.

Note

• Do not force Battery Cover shut. Tab may be misaligned and cause breakage.

Removal

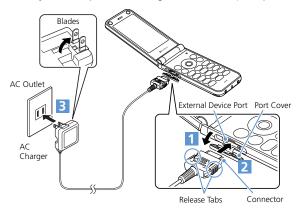
- Turn off handset before removing battery.
- 1 Remove Battery cover
- 2 Press (1) and lift out (2)



Charging Battery

Using AC Charger

Use only SoftBank-specified AC Charger (ZTDAA1, sold separately).

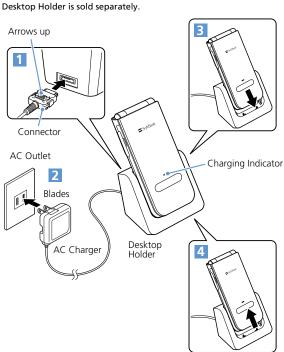


- 1 Open Port Cover
- 2 Insert Charger connector into External Device Port
- 3 Extend Charger blades and plug into an AC Outlet Charging Indicator lights red while charging. When charging is complete, Indicator goes out.
- 4 Disconnect connector from handset
 Press and hold Release Tabs to remove connector.
- Unplug Charger from AC Outlet
- 6 Close Port Cover

Note

- · Battery can only be charged while inserted in handset.
- When Battery is fully depleted, etc., it may take time for Charging Indicator to illuminate.

Using Desktop Holder



- Insert Charger connector into Desktop Holder
- Plug Charger into an AC Outlet
- Place handset in Desktop Holder Charging Indicator lights red while charging. When charging is complete, Indicator goes out.
- Lift out

More Features

Customize

Backlight

Set Backlight during Charging

(P. 14-5)

Sounds

Set to Play Charging Start/End Tones

(P. 14-10)

Power On

- Make sure USIM Card is correctly inserted before turning power on.
- 1 Press and hold -



Tip

- Power-on message (WELCOME) may appear on Display for a while when turning on handset immediately after turning power off or inserting battery.
- After USIM Card is replaced, Security Code is required when powering handset on for the first time. If Security Code is incorrectly entered five times, handset shuts down. Turn handset on again.

Initial Setup

Setup prompt appears in Japanese the first time handset is turned on. Select *NO* and press ① to exit. Change interface language to English (P. 14-5) and restart handset to perform setup as follows.

- 1 [Initial Settings Window] ⇒ **YES**⇒
 - ► To Automatically Enter Date & Time Auto ⇔ ⇒ Select a time zone ⇒ ●
 - ► To Manually Enter Date & Time

 Manual (Date Time Set)

 Select a time zone

 ©

 Enter

 date and time
 ©
- 2 Enter Security Code (9999) ⇒ ●
 ⇒ Enter new Security Code ⇒ ●
 ⇒ YES ⇒ ●
- 3 Select a font size

 Select Separate Setting to customize font per window (P. 14-4).
- [Keypad Sound Setting Window]

 ⇒ ON or OFF ⇒ ●

Tip

- Setup prompt no longer appears after setup is complete.
- · The default Security Code is 9999.

Retrieving Network Information

When 9, 9, 9 or 0 is pressed after initial setup, a prompt appears. Select **YES** to update network settings.

Tip

- Retrieve network information to use networkrelated services, such as mail and the Internet.

Power Off

1 Press and hold — Handset shuts down.



Customize

Clock

- Hide Clock
- Clock Size
- Clock Color
- Set Auto Time Adjustment
- Manually Adjust Time
- Summer Time
- Time Zone (Sub Clock)
- Hide Sub Clock
- Summer Time (Sub Clock)

(P. 14-2)

Auto Power On/Off

Set Auto Power On/Off

(P. 14-3)

Display Settings

- Set a Wake-up Image
- Set a Wake-up Message
- Set Font Type
- Set Font Thickness
- Set Font Sizes Collectively
- Set Font Size for Each Function Window

(P. 14-4)

Sounds

Set Key Sound Off

(P. 14-10)

Resetting Handset

- Reset All Settings to Default
- Initialize Handset to Default Status

(P. 14-28)

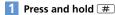
Minding Mobile Manners

Use your handset responsibly. Inappropriate handset use can be both dangerous and bothersome. Take care not to disturb others when using your handset. Adjust handset use according to your surroundings.

- Turn handset power off in theaters, museums and other places where silence is the norm.
- Refrain from use in restaurants, lobbies, elevators, etc.
- Observe signs and instructions regarding handset use aboard trains, etc.
- Refrain from use that interrupts the flow of pedestrian or vehicle traffic.

Activating Manner Mode

Mute handset sound.



Note

 When handset is set to vibrate for incoming calls, be careful as handset may slide off, slide into a stove, etc.

Tip

- Press and hold # again to cancel Manner Mode
- Shutter click sounds even in Manner Mode
- Press and hold # to set or cancel Manner Mode during a call. Short beeps sound through the earpiece when Manner Mode is set or canceled during a call.
- Set or cancel Manner Mode by pressing and holding \mathbf{Q}_{77} .





Manner Mode

- Set Manner Mode Type
- Configure Original Manner Mode

(P. 14-10)

About Codes

Security Code, Center Access Code and Network Password are required to use handset.

- Do not reveal these codes to others.
 Write down your codes.
- SoftBank is not liable for any damage due to handset misuse.

Security Code

Security Code, 9999 by default, is required to use some handset functions. The code can be changed.

 If Security Code is entered incorrectly or nothing is entered for 15 seconds, a tone sounds and a message appears. Enter correct Security Code.

Note

• The warning tone does not sound in Manner Mode or when *Keypad Sound* is set to *OFF*.

Changing Security Code

- 2 Enter current Security Code ⇒ ●
- 3 Enter new Security Code ⇒ ⇒

 YES ⇒ ●

Center Access Code

Center Access Code, a four-digit code assigned at initial subscription, is required to access Optional Services via landlines or to subscribe to fee-based information.

Network Password

Network Password, a four-digit code assigned at initial subscription, is required to use Call Barring.

 If Network Password is incorrectly entered three times, Call Barring settings are locked.
 Network Password and Center Access Code must be changed.

Checking Battery Level

Use Battery Level meters as a guide only.

Battery Level Indicator

Appears at top of Display or on Sub-display.

- 🗐 / 🔲 Almost depleted; charge battery

Battery Level Beeper & Large Indicator

Check battery level by number of beeps and large indicator.

Battery Level indicator appears. Beeps sound according to the battery level. Three beeps: Near full charge Two beeps: Sufficient charge One beep: Almost depleted; charge battery

Note

 The battery level beeper does not sound in Manner Mode or when Keypad Sound is set to OFF.

When Battery Is Empty

Recharge battery appears, the battery alarm sounds for about 10 seconds, and handset powers off in about 60 seconds. Charge battery.

My Phone Number

Check handset phone number.



Account Details appear.

- Add Other Information
- ⇒ 🖾 ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ ⇒ Select an item ⇒ ⇒ Enter information ⇒ ⇒ ⑤
- View All Information
 - \Rightarrow **(a)** \Rightarrow *Display All Data* \Rightarrow **(b)** \Rightarrow Enter Security Code \Rightarrow **(c)** \Rightarrow
 - ⊙ to switch tabs (⇔ ⊙)
- Reset Account Details
 - \Rightarrow **(a)** \Rightarrow **Reset** \Rightarrow **(b)** (\Rightarrow Enter Security Code \Rightarrow **(c)** \Rightarrow **YES** \Rightarrow **(e)**

Using Earphone

Use Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable (sold separately) to connect earphones.

Note

 When ringtone volume (P. 14-8) is set to Silent, no sound is output to earphones. Set volume to Level 1 or higher.

Tip

 When sound source is monaural (calls, etc.), stereo earphones output monaural sound to left and right earphones; when sound source is stereo, only the left channel is output to monaural earphones.

Side Key Guard

Disable Side Keys 177- and 17 Music while handset is closed.

1 Press and hold *
Repeat to cancel setting.

Tip

- Alternatively, set Side Key Guard by:

 ⇒ Settings ⇒ ⇒ Other Settings ⇒
 - Settings → Uther Settings →Side Kev Guard ⇒ O ⇒ ON or OFF



Using ECO Mode

Setting ECO Mode will dim Display and modify settings to decrease battery consumption.

Press and hold 5

ECO Mode is set, and @ appears.

Tip

- Press and hold 5 to set or cancel ECO Mode during a call.



Customize

Earphone-Microphone

- Audio Output
- Microphone Setting
- Answer Calls Automatically
- Save a Phone Number for One-touch Dialing from Earphone-Microphone

(P. 14-11)

Basic Operations



| Menu Operations | 2-2 |
|--------------------------------------|------|
| Accessing Handset Functions | 2-2 |
| Icons/Notifications | 2-3 |
| Navigating through Menus | 2-6 |
| Multitask | |
| Activating Another Function | 2-8 |
| Toggling Functions | 2-9 |
| Text Entry | 2-10 |
| Overview | |
| Entering Characters in 5-touch Mode | 2-11 |
| Editing Text | 2-13 |
| Editing Templates | 2-14 |
| Using Dictionaries | 2-15 |
| Entering Characters in 2-touch Mode | 2-15 |
| Entering Characters in T9 Input Mode | 2-16 |
| Phone Book | 2-18 |
| Overview | 2-18 |
| Creating Phone Book Entries | 2-19 |
| Using Phone Book | 2-20 |
| Phone Book Settings | 2-21 |
| S! Addressbook Back-up | 2-24 |
| Overview | |
| Using S! Addressbook Back-up | 2-24 |
| | |

| \dvanced Features | . 2-26 |
|------------------------|--------|
| Main Menu | 2-26 |
| Desktop Icons | 2-26 |
| Text Entry | 2-27 |
| Templates | 2-28 |
| Dictionaries | 2-28 |
| Phone Book | 2-29 |
| S! Addressbook Back-up | 2-31 |

2



Accessing Handset Functions

 In this guide, most operations start from Main Menu.

From Main Menu

Press • to open Main Menu. Use • to select an item and press • to open sub menus.



Main Menu

Tip

 Handset returns to Standby after 15 seconds of inactivity.

Using Softkeys & Multi Selector

Press Softkeys or use Multi Selector in Standby to access assigned functions.

Softkeys

- : Open Mail menu
- (2): Press and hold to compose new S! Mail
- (v): Access Yahoo! Keitai portal
- (x): Press and hold to open Yahoo! menu
- (Itsumono-Mail is set by default)
- (P): Press and hold to assign a function to key
- (Photo Mode)

Multi Selector

- (5): Access Desktop Icons/Indicators
- O: Press and hold to open S! Quick News List
- Q: Open Phone Book Search window
- : Open Received Calls window
- : Press and hold to open Received Address List
- : Open Redial window
- : Press and hold to open Sent Address List

Keyword Search

Enter a keyword to search function/menu items.

- 1 ⇒ ●
- Enter a keyword ⇒ ●
 <Example> Enter "mail"



Corresponding items are underlined.

3 ② or **③** to select an item **⇒ ⑤**

From Original Menu

Assign often-used functions to Original Menu for quick access.









Press & to toggle between Main Menu and Original Menu.

Enter Menu Item Number

Enter these numbers for direct menu access. Note that Main Menu Theme must be set to Basic.

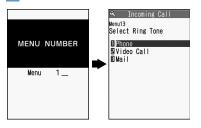
- See P. 15-20 for menu item numbers.
- See P. 2-26 for details on changing Main Menu Theme.

<Example> Access Select Ring Tone (menu no. 13)









Icons/Notifications

Add functions to Icon Window and use them as shortcuts. Notifications appear to inform you of missed calls, new messages, etc. Select a notification to check the information. The following shortcuts are set by default.

- · S! Ouick News*
- · TV
- · Ouick Search · Bar Code Reader
- * Links to Japanese page. Requires network connection.





Menu Operations

Icons

| lcon | Function |
|------------|-------------------------------------|
| O | S! Quick News |
| | TV |
| Q | Quick Search |
| | Bar Code Reader |
| 1 | Call Phone Number |
| Yī | Compose S! Mail |
| SMS 1 | Compose SMS |
| (1 | Access Webpage (Yahoo! Keitai) |
| 1 | Access Webpage (PC Site Browser) |
| Ŋ1 | Play Melody |

| lcon | Function |
|------------|--------------|
| 9 1 | Show Image |
| 1 | Play Video |
| 2 1 | S! Appli |
| | Inbox Folder |
| Ô | Photo Mode |
| 4 | Movie Mode |
| • | Voice Mode |
| | Schedule |
| | To Do List |
| | Text Memo |

| lcon | Function |
|------|-------------------------|
| | Text Reader |
| Ę | Music Player |
| 5 | Life History Viewer |
| | Calculator |
| | Dictionary |
| D.º0 | Receive IR Transmission |
| | Original Menu |
| | PC Site Browser |

Menu Operations



Notifications

| lcon | Function/Information |
|---------------|---|
| Miss | Missed Calls |
| Msg | Answering Machine Play/delete messages. |
| Msg | Answering Machine (Video Message) Play/delete Video Messages. |
| VM | Voice Mail |
| New | New Message(s) |
| (()) Miss | Missed Alarms |
| ALARM | Missed TV Programs |
| REC FINISH | Timer Recording Finished |

| lcon | Function/Information |
|------------|-----------------------------------|
| ¥ | Maximum Call Cost Limit Reached |
| GP1) | Software Update |
| | New S! Info Channel |
| Miss | S! Info Channel Reception Failure |
| ₩ New | New Weather Info. |
| ÇÇ Miss | Weather Info. Reception Failure |
| New | Special Template |
| Get | View Content Keys* |

Notifications disappear after accessing the functions/information. Answering Machine and

Voice Mail notifications disappear after message is played back.

* Content key icon disappears after content keys are checked or deleted.

Menu Operations

2

Basic Operations

Adding Icons

Add up to 15 icons.

1 From a function ⇒ **③** ⇒ **Add Desktop Icon** ⇒ **③** (⇒**YES**⇒ **⑥**)

Tip

Alternatively,
 ⊕ ⇔ ⇔ Create Icon ⇔ ⊕ ⇔ Select function ⇔ ⊕ ⇔ Select a Theme ⇔ ●

Accessing Icons & Notifications





Icon Window

2 ♦ Select an icon ⇒ ●

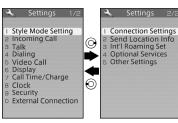
Scrolling Icons

 $\Rightarrow \odot$

Navigating through Menus

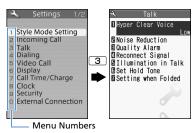
Scrolling Pages

Use \bigcirc or \bigcirc (\bigcirc (\bigcirc _{Music} or \bigcirc ₇₇₋) to scroll next/previous pages.



Selecting Menu Items Using Keypad

Use keypad to enter number corresponding to menu item.



Return to Previous Window or Standby

Press CLEAR to cancel operation and return to previous window.

Press _ to return to Standby.

May not apply to all functions/windows.







Main Menu

- Change Main Menu Theme
- Switch to Simple Menu
- Temporarily Change Design Theme of Main Menu

(P. 2-26)

Desktop Icons

- Delete Notifications
- Edit Title of a Desktop Icon
- Change Icon Image
- Check Icon Information
- Change Order of Desktop Icons
- Delete Desktop Icons
- Reset Desktop Icons
- Change Theme of Desktop Icons
- Show/Hide Desktop Icons

(> P. 2-26)



Display Settings

Set Softkey Color

(P. 14-4)

Desktop Icons

- Set Desktop Theme
- Change Icon Design of a Theme
- Change Order of Icons of a Theme
- Copy Icons to Another Theme
- Move Icons to Another Theme
- Delete Icons of a Theme
- Show New Message Indicator in 3D

(P. 14-6)

Menu Display Settings

- List View and Details View
- Set Main Menu Theme
- Change Icon Design (Original Theme)
- Change Background (Original Theme)
- Reset Original Theme Settings
- Save Last Selected Menu Item to Memory
- Add a Menu Item to Original Menu
- Change Order of Original Menu Items
- Cancel Original Menu ItemsReset Original Menu

(P. 14-7)

Shortcut Key

Change Function Assigned to Shortcut Key

(P. 14-27)

2-7



Multitask

Activate one function per group at one time.

| Function Group | Function |
|------------------|---|
| Mail Group | Mail |
| Yahoo! Group | Yahoo! |
| S! Appli Group | S! Appli |
| Settings Group | Settings |
| Tools Group | Data Folder, Tools, Phone Book, Own Data, Camera |
| TV & Music Group | TV, Music |

- See P. 15-2 for available combinations of functions that can be activated at the same time.
- Confirm currently active tasks in Tasks Bar.



 Transmission fees are incurred while accessing functions during a voice call.

Activating Another Function

Activate another function without exiting current function.

- 1 While using a function ⇒ ®
 - To Activate Function from Main Menu
 - Mail Function
 - To Access Yahoo! Keitai Portal
 - To Activate Camera (Photo Mode)

Toggling Functions

1 When multiple functions are active ⇒ ⓐ



Task Switch Window

To go to Standby, press .

Press
to reopen Task Switch window.

Tip

- To End Multitask: [Task Switch Window]

 □ □ □ Quit
- [Task Switch Window] ⇒ □ ⇒ Quit Selected or Quit All Function ⇒ ●
- Alternatively, press and hold $\scriptsize{\textcircled{\tiny{1}}}$ to return to Standby while current functions remain active.



Text Entry

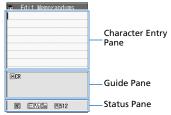
Handset has three text input methods: 5-touch, 2-touch and T9 Input.

• This guide mainly explains Japanese text entry in 5-touch mode.

Overview

Text Entry Window

A text entry window consists of Character Entry Pane, Guide Pane and Status Pane. Indicator and key descriptions are as follows:



Text Entry Window

Character Entry Pane

| I | Cursor |
|----------|------------------------|
| ◀ | End mark (end of text) |

Guide Pane

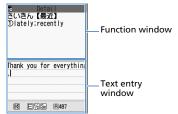
| ▲ ▼ CHG | to convert characters |
|-----------------------|--|
| ▲ ▼ All ▲ ▼ Search | (a) to search Phone Book |
| ▲ ▼ Area | to specify a text range to copy/cut |
| CR | * to insert line feed |
| ⊠ A/a | * to switch case of each character, or to add dakuten (*)/handakuten (*) |
| AA → aa | # to cancel Caps Lock mode |
| # aa → Aa | # to set Shift mode |
| # Aa → AA | # to set Caps Lock mode |
| ⊠ ⊈ Sel. Area | Press and hold * to select area of text to copy (cut). |
| # Paste | Press and hold # to paste copied or cut text. |
| ← Back | ✓ to cycle characters on a key in reverse order (e.g. え→う) |

Status Pane

| 2 5 | Text input method (2-touch/T9 Input mode) (No indicator for 5-touch mode) |
|--------------|---|
| INS OUR | Insert/Overwrite mode |
| 澳加巨型 | Character entry mode |
| | Kuten code input mode (P. 2-28) |
| <u> </u> | Double-byte/Single-byte mode |
| Sm | Lower case input mode |
| CAPS LUCK | Shift/Caps Lock mode |
| R | Bytes remaining for text entry |
| In | Number of entered characters (appears when entering text to USIM Phone Book/SMS message) |

Split Windows

In some instances, a second window opens with text entry window.



Referring to Dictionary from a text entry window

Switching Windows

Press **a** and select **Change Window** to switch windows.

Changing Text Input Methods

1 [Text Entry Window] ⇒ ⑥ ⇒ CHG
Input Method ⇒ ⑥ ⇒ Select a
text input method ⇒ ⑥
Alternatively, press and hold ⊚.

Toggling Character Entry Modes

1 [Text Entry Window]

Press
to toggle entry modes.
Kanji/hiragana → Katakana →
Alohanumeris → Numbers

Tip

• In 2-touch mode, press (a) to toggle single-byte and double-byte modes.

Interruptions during Text Entry

When Battery Runs Out

Battery alarm sounds and *Recharge battery* appears. Text is automatically saved. Access the same function to continue text entry.

Text may not be saved depending on the function.

When ___ is Pressed

A message appears asking whether to end text entry. Select *YES* and press ① to end text entry without saving the text. To continue text entry, select *NO* and press ①.

When a Voice Call Arrives

Answer the call. After call ends, text entry window returns.

Entering Characters in 5-touch Mode

Press a key multiple times to cycle through letters assigned to that key.

For key assignment, see P. 15-10.

Kanji, Hiragana & Katakana

Enter a reading (in hiragana) and convert to kanji, katakana, etc.

Using Word Prediction

Enter a character and Word Prediction suggests words starting with that character. Word Prediction also suggests word selection for words to follow. Switch to kanji/hiragana mode to use Word Prediction.



Text Entry

<Example> Entering "携帯電話"

[Text Entry Window] ⇒ 2 (four times)

"け" is entered in Character Entry Pane. Suggestion list shows predictions for words beginning with "け" in Guide Pane.



2 ② ⇒ Select "携带" ⇒ ●



"携带" appears in Character Entry Pane. A suggestion list of words that follow "携带" appears in Guide Pane.

■ When Required Word Does Not Appear

CLEAR

Continue hiragana (reading) entry in Character Entry Pane to narrow down selection.





■ To Exit Suggestion List

CLEAR Or (a)

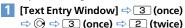
Tip

 Handset has a learning feature that adds entered words to the suggestion list. Press and hold to delete an added word from the suggestion list.

Converting Hiragana

If the required suggestion does not appear or word prediction is set to off, convert to Kanji as shown below:

<Example> Entering "佐々木"





- 2 💿
 - To Determine Entered Hiragana without Converting It
 - \Rightarrow \odot
- 3 Select a word ⇒
 - To Change Conversion Range ⇔ ⊙

Dakuten (*) & Handakuten (*)

<Example> Entering "が"

1 [Text Entry Window] ⇒ 2 (once)

⇒ ★ ⇒ ●

Switching to Lower Case

<Example> Change "つ" to "っ"

1 [Text Entry Window] ⇒ 4 (three times) ⇒ * ⇒ •

Pictographs, Symbols & Emoticons

1 [Text Entry Window] ⇒ 🕏



- - To Switch Pages within a List

 ⇒ (a)
- 3 CLEAR List closes.

Common Phrases (Templates)

- 1 [Text Entry Window] **© Common Phrases ©**
- 2 Select a folder ⇒ ⇒ Select a phrase ⇒ (twice)

Alphanumerics, Numbers & Katakana

Enter alphanumerics, numbers or katakana in kanji/hiragana input mode.

1 [Text Entry Window] ⇒ Enter hiragana ⇒ 🏵 ⇒ Select a character ⇒ 🌘

Editing Text

Deletion & Correction

- 1 [Text Entry Window]

 → Move cursor to the left of the character to delete

 → CLEAR
 - To Delete All Characters to the Right of Cursor
 - Press and hold CLEAR

Press and hold CLEAR

- To Delete Entire Text

 → Move cursor to the end of text →
- Position cursor ⇒ Enter correct characters

Text Entry

4

Copy, Cut & Paste

- Only one entry can be stored on clipboard. If you copy or cut new text, the previously copied or cut text is overwritten.
- 1 [Text Entry Window] ⇒ **②** ⇒ **Copy** or **Cut** ⇒ **③**



2 Move cursor to beginning of characters ⇒ ●

3 Move cursor to end of characters ⇒ ●



4 Position cursor ⇒ **(a)** ⇒ **Paste** ⇒ **(b)**

Repeat to paste same text multiple times.

Tip

 Copied text is saved until new text is copied/cut or handset is turned off.

Editing Templates

1 (() ○ () Own Data (() () () (()



Templates (Common phrases) Window

Select a folder ⇒ ●



Templates List

Select an entry ⇒ 🖾 ⇒ Enter text ⇒ ●



Using Dictionaries

Saving Words to Own Dictionary

Save frequently used words to Own Dictionary. For each word, save a reading (in hiragana). When the reading is entered in a text entry window, the word appears among the suggestions.



<New> ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter word ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter reading ⇒ ●

Tip

To check saved words:
 Select a word ⇒ ●

Using Downloaded Dictionaries

Download dictionaries from Yahoo! Keitai sites. Dictionary must be enabled in advance.



Downloaded Dictionary Window

- Select a dictionary ⇒ ●★ appears next to the enabled
- Tip

dictionary.

- To disable a dictionary:
 [Downloaded Dictionary Window] ⇒ Select a dictionary with ★ ⇒ ●
- If an emoticon dictionary is enabled, its content is reflected in the emoticon list when entering emoticons.

Entering Characters in 2-touch Mode

Each hiragana character is entered by combining two key presses.

- For combinations of character input keys, see
 P 15-11
- Procedures for selecting predicted words and for converting entered hiragana are the same as those used in 5-touch mode (P. 2-11).

<Example> Entering "キャンプ"

- The following example is in Japanese text entry mode
- 1 [Text Entry Window] ⇒ 2 2 (き) ⇔ 8 0 (change to lower case mode) ⇔ 8 1 (ゃ) ⇔ 8 0 (change to upper case mode) ⇔ 0 3 (ん) ⇔ 6 3 (な) ⇒ 0 5 (*)
- 2 **②** ⇒ Select a word ⇒ **③**

Tip

- Pressing ** also adds dakuten (*) and handakuten (*) or toggles upper case and lower case.
- Press 🖾 to toggle double-byte and single-byte modes.



Entering Characters in T9 Input Mode

Press a key once for each character, and select the word from the suggestion list.

- For key assignment, see P. 15-12.
- When character entry mode is "Number." 5-touch input method is automatically applied.

<Example> Entering "春"

- The following example is in Japanese text entry mode.
- 1 [Text Entry Window] ⇒ 6 (row は)⇒ 9 (row ら) Word predictions for the key combination appear.



■ To Change Conversion Range $\Rightarrow \odot$

■ Toggle Kanji and Hiragana Suggestion Lists

⇒ (#)

■ Toggle English and Japanese **Suggestion Lists**

 $\Rightarrow \boxtimes$



Select word from among the suggestions in Guide Pane.

■ To Show Converted Words on **Suggestion List**

For example, if you specify "はる," then "張る." "貼る" and other words that have the same reading appear on the suggestion list.

■ To Show Predicted Words on Suggestion List

 $\Rightarrow \boxed{ }$

For example, if you specify "はる," then "春休み." "遥か" and other words that begin with the same reading appear on the suggestion list.

■ To Exit Suggestion List and Continue **Character Entry**

CLEAR





Re-entering Words

Re-enter as shown below if the desired word does not appear.

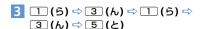
<Example> Entering "らんらんと"

- The following example is in Japanese text entry mode.
- 1 [Text Entry Window] ⇒ 9 (row ら) ⇒ ① (row わ) ⇒ ⑨ (row ら) ⇒ (row わ) ⇒ 4 (row た) "らんらんと" does not appear in suggestion list.
- 2 🕏



Cursor is on the first character of the word. The edit window opens in Guide Pane, where hiragana characters of row "ら" appear.







■ If No Correction is Necessary

⇒ ⊙ to move cursor to the next character

■ To End Re-entering a Word

The words predicted/converted from the re-entered word appear on the suggestion list.







Advanced

Text Entry

- Switch between Lower Case & Upper Case
- Switch between Single-byte & Double-byte
- Cvcle Characters in Reverse Order
 - Undo Last Operation
 - Move Cursor to Top/End of Text
 - Overwrite & Insert Modes
- Insert Line Feed
- Input a Space
- Use Dictionary
- Ouote Text
- Use Kuten Codes

(P. 2-27)

Templates

- Edit a Folder Name
- Reset a Folder Name
- Edit Templates
- Reset Templates

(P. 2-28)

Dictionaries

- Edit Entries
- Delete Entries
- Edit Title
- View Information
- Delete Dictionaries

(P. 2-28)



Text Entry

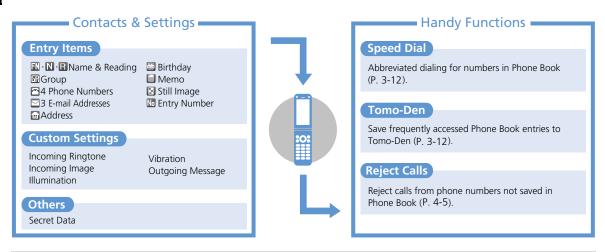
- Set Text Input Method
- Set Word Prediction
- Set to Show T9 Suggestion Words in Kanji or Hiragana
- Clear Learning History
- Change Font Size
- Set Auto Cursor Movement in 5-Touch Mode

(P. 14-27)



Overview

Save phone numbers, e-mail addresses and other contact information to Phone Book.



Back Up Important Information

Keep a separate copy of Phone Book entry information. When battery is exhausted or removed for extended periods, Phone Book data may be lost or altered. Damage to handset may also affect data recovery. SoftBank is not liable for damages from lost/altered Phone Book data.

1

Creating Phone Book Entries

- <Example> Enter a name, phone number, e-mail address and specify a group

Check reading ⇒ ●

Reading is entered automatically. Edit as necessary.



Phone Book Entry Window

3 🖫 ⇒ • Select a group ⇒ •

- 4 ☐ ⇒ ⇒ Enter phone number ⇒ ● ⇒ Select an icon ⇒ ● To save additional numbers, select ☐ <Not Stored> and repeat the same
- **6** ⊠

Setting Incoming Image

- - ► To Capture an Image with Camera

 **Photo Mode \infty \infty \infty \text{capture image}

 \infty \infty

Tip

 To cancel selected image, select Release This and press

 .

Creating Entries from Other Functions

Create entries from:

- · Received calls
- Dialed Calls

Redial

- ·Text Reader
- · Bar Code Reader
- Receive/Sent Address List
- Yahoo! Keitai
- · Phone Number Entry window

<Example> Create an entry from Received

- - ► To Save as New Entry
 New ⇒ ●
- 2 Enter other items ⇒ ♥ (⇒ YES ⇒●)



Resuming Phone Book Edit Operation

If battery is empty or if another function was activated while editing an entry, resume operation as follows:

- Add to Phone Book ⇒ ● ⇒ Phone ⇒ ● ⇒ Recall ⇒ ●
- Enter each item ⇒ 🖾 (⇒ YES ⇒ (**O**)

Tip

· Save entry before you exit Phone Book. Otherwise, all changes will be lost.

Using Phone Book

Dialing from Phone Book

● ⇒ Phone Book ⇒ ●



Phone Book Entry List

🙎 🖾 or 🐨 to switch tabs 🖈 🗘 🖈 Select an entry ⇒ ●



Entry Details

⊗ ⇒ Select a number ⇒ Press for video calls.

Tip

 Alternatively, select a phone number from Phone Book Entry List and press
to make a call. If there are multiple entries, the first number is called

Specifying a Search Method





Phone Book Search Window

Select a search method ⇒ ● Search Reading:

Enter a reading and press .

Search Name:

Enter a name and press .

Search Phone No.:

Enter a phone number and press .

Search E-mail:

Enter an e-mail address and press .

Search Memory No.:

Enter three-digit entry number.

Search Group:

Select a group to view saved entries.

Search Column:

Press a key (or +) to access the tab corresponding to that key.

Search All:

Phone Book is organized by tabs (Japanese syllabary order).



Phone Book Entry List

Tip

 Phone Book entries saved on USIM Card are indicated by

Accessing Entries from Other Functions

Access Phone Book entries from Received Calls, Dialed Calls, Redial and Received/Sent Address List.

Access Entries from Received Calls

Look-up Phone Book ⇒ **(●)**

Access Entries from Dialed Calls

Calls ⇒ ● Select an item ⇒ 🕏 ⇒ Look-up Phone Book ⇒ •

Access Entries from Redial

○ ⇒ Select an item ⇒ • ⇒ Look-up Phone Book ⇒ ●

Access Entries from Received **Address List**

⇒ 🏚 ⇒ Look-up Phone Book 🖈 •

Access Entries from Sent Address List

Press and hold ⊙ ⇒ Select an item

Phone Book Settings

Customizing Handset Response

Set different ringtones, images, etc. per entry item or Group.

Indicators

The following indicators appear for set items.



Ringtone (Incoming Calls) Ringtone (Mail)

Illumination (Incoming Calls)

Illumination (Mail)

Vibrator (Incoming Calls)

Vibrator (Mail)

Incoming Image (Calls)

Outgoing Message (Incoming Calls)

Phone Book

To Customize by Phone Number/E-mail Address

<Example> Set a ringtone for incoming voice calls

- 1 [Entry Details] ⇒ ⊙ ⇒ Select a phone number ⇒ ⊙ ⇒ Ring

 Tone/Image ⇒ ⊙
- **2** Voice Call (Recv.) ⇒ ●

To Customize by Group

<Example> Set illumination for incoming messages

- 1 [Phone Book Entry List] ⇒ **②** ⇒ Group Setting ⇒ **③**
- 3 Mail (Recv.) ⇒ ●

Note

- Custom Settings are unavailable for secret Phone Book entries.
- Custom Settings are canceled when entry is set as secret.

Tip

 To cancel Custom Settings, select an item with ★ and press ⁽²⁾.

Restricting Calls to/from Specific Phone Numbers

Restrict calls to/from specific numbers in Phone Book. This can help manage personal calls and prevent nuisance calls.

- 2 Enter Security Code ⇒ ●
- 3 Select a restriction type ⇒ Restrict Dialing:

Permit outgoing calls to only one number. Note that the number can only be dialed from Phone Book.

Call Rejection:

Restrict incoming calls from a specified number.

Call Acceptation:

Receive incoming calls only from a specified number.

Tip

 ★ indicates currently set restriction; to cancel, select the setting and press •.

When Restrict Dialing is Set

The following operations are disabled:

- · Dialing by Keypad
- · Dialing from Received Calls
- Calling from Phone Book (except to the permitted number)
- · Creating Phone Book entries
- · Editing/deleting Phone Book entries
- · Copying Phone Book entries to/from USIM Card

Tip

- When Restrict Dialing is set, all records on Redial, Dialed Calls and Sent Address List are deleted.
- Emergency calls (110, 119 and 118) are available even when *Restrict Dialing* is set.
- If you change or delete the specified number, the set restriction is canceled.
 Cancel Restrict Dialing to edit or delete.

Basic Operations

Setting Secret Entries

Prevent others from accessing certain Phone Book entries.

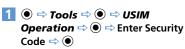
- Phone Book entries set as secret only appear in Secret Mode or Secret Data Only Mode (P. 4-6).
- [Entry Details] ⇒ ô ⇒ Set Secret
 ⇒ ●

Tip

- Entries saved while Secret Mode or Secret Data Only Mode is active are saved as secret entries.
- When a Tomo-Den entry is set as a secret entry, the entry's Tomo-Den setting is canceled.

Managing USIM Phone Book

Phone Book entries can be copied between handset and USIM Card.



- **3** Search Phone Book
- 4 Select an entry ⇒ ●
 Repeat this step to specify other entries.

Note

- Items that cannot be saved to USIM Phone Book are not copied.
- Phone Book entries set as secret cannot be copied.
- All handset transmissions are unavailable while copying entries.

More Features

Advanced

Saving Additional Information

- Save an Address or Memo
- Save Birthday
- Change Entry Number

(P. 2-29)

Phone Book Search

- Sort Phone Book Search Results
- Change Index Tab of Phone Book Entry List
- Change Font Size
- Change Phone Number/E-mail Address Order
- Compose an S! Mail from Phone Book
- Compose an SMS Message from Phone Book

(> P. 2-29)

Managing Phone Book

- Check Custom Ringtone/Image Settings by Item
- Cancel Custom Ringtone/Image Settings by
 Item
- Check Restriction Settings by Restriction Type
- Cancel Restriction Settings by Restriction Type
- Check Number of Phone Book Entries
- Edit a Phone Book Entry
- Copy a Phone Book Entry
- Send Entries by S! Mail
- Delete Entries
- Delete Items from an Entry
- Delete an Entry from USIM Card

(P. 2-30)



Phone Book

- Set Preferred Search Method
- Change Group Name

(P. 14-12)



S! Addressbook Back-up

Overview

Back up handset Phone Book to server.

- Separate subscription required.
- See SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (http://www.softbank.jp) for details.
- Service subscription sets Auto Sync Settings to ON during network information retrieval (Cycle Settings: After Editing Ph.Book, Sync Type: Synchronize).
 Synchronization will automatically begin 10
- minutes after you edit Phone Book.

 Even if *Auto Sync Settings* is set to *OFF*, setting returns to *ON* after network information is retrieved again.
- After unsubscribing, make sure that Auto Sync Settings is set to OFF.

Note

- · Fully charge battery beforehand.
- When Auto Sync Settings is ON, editing entries automatically synchronizes, backs up or downloads updated entries. Packet transmission fees are incurred.
- All data in the server Phone Book will be deleted if Synchronize, Sync from Client or Backup is performed after deleting all data in handset Phone Book.
- All data in handset Phone Book will be deleted if Synchronize, Sync from Server or Restore is performed after deleting all data in the server Phone Book.
- The following Phone Book items are not synchronized.
- –Still Image
- -Entry Number
- -Ring Tone
- -Illumination
- -Vibrator
- -Incoming Call Image
- -Outgoing Message

Using S! Addressbook Back-up

Synchronizing Phone Book

Connect to Phone Book backed up on server and bring it up to date with handset's Phone Book

- The first time you synchronize will be in Synchronize regardless of the setting.
- Synchronization can be any of the following types.

| Synchronize | Synchronize handset Phone Book and server Phone Book. Both Phone Books are synchronized with the newest information. |
|---------------------|---|
| Sync From Client | Copy updated information to server Phone Book. |
| Sync From Server | Copy update information to handset Phone Book. |
| Backup | Back up handset Phone Book to server (note that Server Phone Book is deleted). |
| Restore | Restore server Phone Book to handset (note that handset Phone Book is deleted). |







S! Addressbook Back-up Window

- Select type of synchronization ⇒

 ♥ YES ⇒
 ♥
 Synchronization starts. Synchronization results appear after completion.
- 4 🖾

Checking Synchronize Log

1 [S! Addressbook Back-up Window]

⇒ Sync Log ⇒ ● ⇒ Select an item ⇒ ●



- Advanced
- S! Addressbook Back-up
- Delete Synchronize Log

(P. 2-31)



- S! Addressbook Back-up
- Set Auto Synchronize
- Set Auto Synchronize Off
- Check Auto Synchronize Settings

(P. 14-12)



Main Menu

Change Main Menu Theme

or **NO** 🖈 🖲)

Switch to Simple Menu

- ⇒ Simple Menu ⇒ (⇒ YES) or **NO** 🖈 🖲)
- In Simple Menu, font size is larger and menu options are limited to basic ones.

Temporarily Change Design Theme of Main Menu

- Next time vou open Main Menu, default Main Menu returns

Desktop Icons

Delete Notifications

(Press and hold CLEAR

Edit Title of a Desktop Icon

(5) ⇒ Select an icon ⇒ (a) ⇒ Edit Title ⇒

Change Icon Image

⑤ ⇒ Select an icon ⇒ **ⓒ** ⇒ **CHG Icon** Select a folder ⇒ ● Select a file ⇒ ● ▶ To reset icon image, select Default Icon *Image* and press .

Check Icon Information

⑤ ⇒ Select an icon ⇒ **(a)** ⇒ *Icon Info* Setting 🖈 🖲

Change Order of Desktop Icons

(5) ⇒ Select an icon ⇒ (a) ⇒ Sort ⇒ (b) ⇒ YES ⇒ • Select a position ⇒ •

Delete Desktop Icons

- ⑤ ⇒ Select an icon ⇒ **a** ⇒ **Delete** ⇒ •
- To Delete the Selected Icon. ⇒ Delete This ⇒ • YES ⇒ •
- To Delete Multiple Icons
 - ⇒ Delete Selected ⇒ Select icons ⇒
- To Delete All ⇒ Delete All ⇒ • YES ⇒ •

Reset Desktop Icons

(5) ⇒ (a) ⇒ Reset Desktop ⇒ (a) ⇒ YES \Rightarrow (\bullet)

Change Theme of Desktop Icons

(5) ⇒ (2) ⇒ Change Desktop ⇒ (4) ⇒ Select a theme ⇒ ● YES ⇒ ●

Show/Hide Desktop Icons

(5) \Rightarrow (9) \Rightarrow Display Setting \Rightarrow (0) \Rightarrow Display always or Display at Use ⇒ ● (⇒ (**(**)

When **Display at Use** is set. Desktop Icons only appear when you press (5) in Standby.

Text Entry

Start Here

Functions Before Entering Text

Switch between Lower Case & Upper Case

[Text Entry Window] ⇒ 🏚 ⇒ Lower Case or Upper Case 🖈 🖲

Switch between Single-byte & Double-byte

[Text Entry Window] ⇒ 🏚 ⇒ Single-byte or **Double-byte** 🖈 🖲

Functions While Entering Text

Cycle Characters in Reverse Order

[Text Entry Window] ⇒ Input a character ⇒7

This procedure is available in 5-touch mode.

Undo Last Operation

[Text Entry Window] ⇒ Press and hold <a>✓

Move Cursor to Top/End of Text

[Text Entry Window] ⇒ 🏚 ⇒ Jump ⇒ • ⇒ To Beainning or To End ⇒ •

Overwrite & Insert Modes

[Text Entry Window] ⇒ 🏚 ⇒ Overwrite or

Text entry windows always open in *Insert* mode.

Insert Line Feed

[Text Entry Window] ⇒ 🔻

Press
to insert line feed at the end of text.

Input a Space

[Text Entry Window] ⇒ 🏚 ⇒ Space ⇒ 🍥 Press to add a space at the end of text.

Use Dictionary

[Text Entry Window] → 🗗 🖒 🖈 Refer Dic. →

- To Enter a Word
 - ⇒ Enter Word ⇒ Enter word ⇒ ⇒ Select a dictionary ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a word Read descriptions of the word
- To Select Area
- Select Area > Move cursor to beginning of word ⇒ ● Move cursor to end of word ⇒ • Select a dictionary ⇒ Select a word ⇒ ● Read descriptions of the word
- To Enter a Word from Search History ⇒ Reference History ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a word ⇒ ● Select a dictionary ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a word ⇒ • Read descriptions of the word

2

Quote Text

[Text Entry Window] \Rightarrow **(a)** \Rightarrow **Quote Data** \Rightarrow **(b)**

- To Quote from a Phone Book Entry

 ⇒ Quote Phonebook ⇒ ⊕ ⇒ Search
 Phone Book ⇒ Select a data item to quote text from ⇒ ⊕ ⇒ ⊜
- To Quote from Account Details
 ⇒ Account Details
 ⇒ ⊕ ⇒ Enter Security
 Code
 ⇒ ⊕ ⇒ Select a data item
- To Scan Bar Code by Bar Code Reader
 ⇒ Bar Code Reader
 ⇒ ©
 ⇒ Scan a bar code with camera

Use Kuten Codes

Templates

Start Here

[Templates (Common phrases) Window]

......P. 2-14 [Templates List]............P. 2-14

Edit a Folder Name

[Templates (Common phrases) Window] ⇒
Select a folder ⇒ ⊕ ⇒ Edit Folder Name
⇒ ● ⇒ Enter folder name ⇒ ●

Reset a Folder Name

Edit Templates

[Templates List] \Rightarrow Select a template \Rightarrow **a** \Rightarrow Edit \Rightarrow Edit phrase \Rightarrow **a**

Reset Templates

[Templates List] ⇒ Select a template ⇒ 🏚

- To Delete the Selected Template
 - \Rightarrow Delete This \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow YES \Rightarrow \bigcirc
- To Delete All
 - ⇒ Delete All ⇒ ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ ● ⇒ YES ⇒ ●
- User entries are deleted, and preinstalled templates return to default.

Dictionaries

Start Here

[Own Dictionary Window]...... P. 2-15 [Downloaded Dictionary Window]..... P. 2-15

Own Dictionary

Edit Entries

 $[\hbox{Own Dictionary Window}] \stackrel{\Longrightarrow}{\hookrightarrow} \hbox{Select an} \\ \hbox{entry} \stackrel{\Longrightarrow}{\hookrightarrow} \boxdot \Rightarrow \hbox{Edit word} \stackrel{\Longrightarrow}{\hookrightarrow} \boxdot \\ \hbox{Edit reading} \stackrel{\Longrightarrow}{\hookrightarrow} \bigodot$

Delete Entries

[Own Dictionary Window] > Select an entry 🖈 🏚 🖈 Delete 🖈 📵

- To Delete the Selected Entry ⇒ Delete This ⇒ • YES ⇒ •
- To Delete Multiple Entries
- ⇒ Delete Selected ⇒ Select entries \Rightarrow \bullet \Rightarrow \bowtie \Rightarrow YES \Rightarrow \bullet
- To Delete All
- ⇒ Delete All ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ () ⇒ YES ⇒ ()

Downloaded Dictionaries

Fdit Title

[Downloaded Dictionary Window] > Select a dictionary \Rightarrow 🏚 \Rightarrow Edit Title \Rightarrow 🕥 \Rightarrow Edit title 🖈 🖲

View Information

[Downloaded Dictionary Window] ⇒ Select a dictionary \Rightarrow 🏚 🖈 Dictionary Info \Rightarrow 💿

Delete Dictionaries

[Downloaded Dictionary Window] ⇒ Select a dictionary 🖈 🍙

- To Delete the Selected Dictionary Delete This $\Rightarrow \bigcirc$ YES $\Rightarrow \bigcirc$
- To Delete All
 - Delete All \Rightarrow Tenter Security Code
 - ⇒ () ⇒ YES ⇒ ()

Phone Book

Start Here

| Phone Book Entry Window] | P. | 2-19 |
|--------------------------|----|------|
| Phone Book Entry List] | P. | 2-20 |
| Entry Details] | P. | 2-20 |

Saving Additional Information

Save an Address or Memo

[Phone Book Entry Window] 🖈 🛅 or 🗐 \Rightarrow \bigcirc Enter content \Rightarrow \bigcirc (\Rightarrow \bowtie \Rightarrow Select an icon ⇒ (●)

Save Birthday

[Phone Book Entry Window] ⇒ 🗒 ⇒ 💿 ⇒ Enter date of birth ⇒ •

Change Entry Number

[Phone Book Entry Window] ⇒ Mo ⇒ ● ⇒ Change entry number ⇒ ●

Phone Book Search

Sort Phone Book Search Results

[Phone Book Entry List] ⇒ **(a)** ⇒ **Sort** ⇒ **(9)** ⇒ Select a criterion ⇒ • Not available for all search methods.

Change Index Tab of Phone Book Entry List

[Phone Book Entry List] ⇒ (a) ⇒ Change Display \Rightarrow (a) \Rightarrow Alphabet, Memory No. or Group \Rightarrow 🖲

Change Font Size

[Phone Book Entry List]/[Entry Details] => **(a)** ⇒ Font Setting ⇒ **(9)** ⇒ Standard Font, Big Font (or Small Font) 👄 💿



Change Phone Number/E-mail Address Order

[Entry Details] ⇒ Select a phone number/e-mail address ⇒ **③** ⇒ *Move to Top* ⇒ **⑤**

This procedure is available when more than one phone number/e-mail address is saved to a Phone Book entry.

Compose an S! Mail from Phone Book

[Entry Details] ⇒ ۞ ⇒ Select an e-mail address ⇒ ● ⇒ Compose S! Mail

Compose an SMS Message from Phone Book

[Entry Details] ⇔ ⊕ ⇔ Select a phone number ⇔ ● ⇔ Compose SMS ⇔ ● ⇔ Compose SMS message

Managing Phone Book

Check Custom Ringtone/Image Settings by Item

[Phone Book Entry List] ⇔ ♠ ⇔ Ring Tone/
Image ⇔ ♠ ⇔ Select an item with ★ ⇔
♠

Select another item with ★ to view that setting.

Cancel Custom Ringtone/Image Settings by Item

Image ⇒ ● ⇒ Select an item with ★ ⇒
● ⇒ Select an item with ★ ⇒ ● ⇒
Release Settings ⇒ ● ⇒ YES ⇒ ●

When the same ringtone/image is set for

[Phone Book Entry List] ⇒ 🏚 ⇒ Ring Tone/

When the same ringtone/image is set for multiple entries, canceling the setting for one entry cancels setting for all entries.

Check Restriction Settings by Restriction Type

[Phone Book Entry List] ⇒ ⊕ ⇔

**Restrictions ⇔ ● ⇔ Enter Security Code

⇒ ● ⇒ Select a restriction type with ★ ⇔

⊕ ⇔ Check Settings ⇔ ●

Cancel Restriction Settings by Restriction Type

[Phone Book Entry List] ⇒ ⑥ ⇒

**Restrictions ⇒ ⑥ ⇒ Enter Security Code

*> ⑥ ⇒ Select a restriction type with ★ ⇒

® ⇒ **Release Settings ⇒ ⑥ ⇒ **YES ⇒ ⑥

Check Number of Phone Book Entries

[Phone Book Entry List] \Rightarrow **(a)** \Rightarrow **No. of Phone Book** \Rightarrow **(a)**

Edit a Phone Book Entry

Copy a Phone Book Entry

[Entry Details] ⇒ **(a)** ⇔ **Copy to USIM** or **Copy from USIM** ⇔ **(e)** ⇔ **YES** ⇔ **(e)**

Send Entries by S! Mail

[Phone Book Entry List] \Rightarrow $\textcircled{o} \Rightarrow$ *Attach to Mail* \Rightarrow $\textcircled{o} \Rightarrow$ Compose S! Mail \Rightarrow o

Delete Entries

[Phone Book Entry List] ⇒ Select an entry ⇒ ♠ ⇒ Delete Data ⇒ ●

- To Delete the Selected Entry
- ⇒ Delete This ⇒ ⇒ YES ⇒ ●
- To Delete Multiple Entries
 - ⇒ Delete Selected ⇒ ⇒ Select entries ⇒ ⇒ ⋈ ⇒ YES ⇒ ●
- To Delete All
- ⇒ Delete All ⇒ ⇒ Enter Security Code
- $\Rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet} \Rightarrow \textit{YES} \Rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet} \Rightarrow \textit{YES} \Rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet}$
- If an entry is also saved to Tomo-Den, confirmation appears. Select **YES** to delete.

Delete Items from an Entry

[Entry Details] ⇒ ۞ ⇒ Select an item ⇒ ⑥ ⇒ Delete Data ⇒ ⑥ ⇒ Delete Phone No., Delete Mail Add., Delete Address, Delete Birthday, Delete Memorandums or Delete Image ⇒ ⑥ ⇒ YES ⇒ ⑥

Delete an Entry from USIM Card

- ♠ → Tools ➡ ♠ ⇒ USIM Operation ➡
 ♠ ⇒ Enter Security Code ➡ ♠ ⇒ Delete
 ➡ ♠ ⇒ USIM ➡ ♠ ⇒ Phone Book ➡ ♠
- ⇒ Search Phone Book ⇒ Select an entry
- \Rightarrow \bullet \Rightarrow \bowtie \Rightarrow YES \Rightarrow \bullet

S! Addressbook Back-up

Start Here

[S! Addressbook Back-up Window].....P. 2-25

Delete Synchronize Log

[S! Addressbook Back-up Window] ⇒ Sync Log ⇒ ● ⇒ Select Log ⇒ ♠

- To Delete the Selected Log
 - \Rightarrow Delete This \Rightarrow \bullet \Rightarrow YES \Rightarrow \bullet
- To Delete Multiple Logs
 - Delete Selected ⇒ ⇒ Select Log ⇒
 ⇒ ⇒ YES ⇒ ●
- To Delete All
- ⇒ Delete All ⇒ Enter Security Code
- \Rightarrow \bullet \Rightarrow YES \Rightarrow \bullet

Calling



| Overview | 3-2 |
|--|--------|
| Voice Call | 3-3 |
| Making Voice Calls | 3-3 |
| International Calls | 3-3 |
| Answering Voice Calls | 3-4 |
| Recording the Other Party's Voice | 3-4 |
| Answering Machine | 3-4 |
| Playing Messages | 3-5 |
| Video Call | 3-7 |
| Video Call Window | 3-7 |
| Making Video Calls | |
| Answering Video Calls | 3-8 |
| Call Logs | . 3-10 |
| Dialing from Call Logs | 3-10 |
| Call Time & Cost | 3-11 |
| Speed Dialing | . 3-12 |
| Speed Dial | 3-12 |
| Tomo-Den | 3-12 |
| Calling While Abroad (Global Roaming). | . 3-13 |
| Calling Japan and Other Countries | 3-13 |
| Calling within the Same Country | 3-13 |
| Optional Services | . 3-14 |
| Overview | |
| | |

| dvanced Features | 3-16 |
|-------------------------|--------|
| Outgoing Call Functions | 3-16 |
| International Calls | 3-16 |
| Handling Incoming Calls | 3-16 |
| Engaged Call Operations | . 3-17 |
| Answering Machine | 3-18 |
| Call Logs | 3-18 |
| Speed Dial | 3-18 |
| Optional Services | 3-19 |



3

Voice call and video call are available on handset











Calling Abroad from Japan

Make/receive voice and video calls

 International phone service available without separate application.

Global Roaming

Using Handset Abroad

Handset is Global Roaming Service eligible. (Prior application may be required.)

· For details, see: http://mb.softbank.jp/en/global services/global roaming/ or contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P. 15-51).

Emergency Calls

Your location is automatically reported to the corresponding agency (police, etc.) when you place emergency calls (110, 119 or 118) with SoftBank 3G handsets.

(Emergency Location Report)

- Registration and transmission fees do not apply.
- Positioning accuracy is affected by location and signal conditions. Always provide your location and purpose on the phone.
- Location Information is not reported when: · The call is placed without Caller ID (e.g.
 - prefixed by 184). However, the corresponding agency may obtain your Location Information in a life threatening situation.
 - · Abroad (International Roaming)

Emergency calls are possible even while some handset restrictions are active.

- · Restrict Dialing (P. 2-22)
- · Keypad Lock (P. 4-4)
- Set Max Cost Limit (P. 14-14)
- · Emission OFF Mode (P. 4-5)
- · PIN1 Code Entry Set (P. 4-2)

Making Voice Calls

1 Enter phone number



Phone Number Entry Window

- **■** Correcting Misentries
 - ⇒ ⓒ to scroll cursor ⇒ □ to delete (press and hold to delete all numbers to the left) ⇒ Reenter number(s)
- **■** Deleting Phone Number

 \Rightarrow

2 7



voice can vviiic

3 👝 to end call

Note

The other party may hear a short beep when

 to 9, * or # are pressed during a call.

Tip

- Always include the area code even when dialing from the same area.
- When you hear a busy tone, the other party is on another line.
- When you hear a message saying that the other party cannot be reached, the other party's mobile phone is off or is out of signal range.
- When you hear a message asking for your caller ID, call again with your number revealed.

- 15 seconds into a voice call, Display backlight becomes dim. If no keys are pressed for 15 seconds, Display turns off and handset enters Power Save Mode. Calls are not disconnected and handset operations are available even in Power Save Mode.
- Connect stereo earphone-microphone to make or take calls with handset closed.

Operations during Voice Calls

| Adjust Earpiece Volume | Press and hold 🛇 |
|---------------------------|--|
| volume | A _{₹7-} or ¶ _{Music} |
| Hold Call | CLEAR |

International Calls

Application not required.

- 1 Enter phone number ⇒ **(a)** ⇒ *Int'l*Call ⇒ **(a)**
- 3 👝 to end call

3

Answering Voice Calls

- When a call arrives ⇒ <a> ✓

Tip

 When receiving calls from abroad, mobile phone numbers appear as "country code + phone number (initial 0 is omitted)."

Recording the Other Party's Voice

Press and hold Music during a call A short beep sounds through the earpiece and recording starts. When remaining recording time reaches five seconds, a short beep sounds. When recording is finished, two short beeps sound

To stop recording, press
or press and hold Music.

Answering Machine

Record caller's messages on handset when you are unable to answer voice or video calls.

Setting Answering Machine

- Settings ⇒ Incoming Call ⇒ ● ⇒ Answering Machine ⇒ ●
- **ON** ⇒ **⑤** ⇒ Select an outgoing message 🖈 🖲
- **Enter ring time**

Tip

- · When Voice Mail or Call Forwarding is activated, set a shorter ring time for Answering Machine.
- Alternatively, press and hold CLEAR to set/cancel Answering Machine from Standby.
- · Answering Machine is unavailable when handset is off, out-of-range or in Emission OFF Mode; use Voice Mail (P. 3-14).

When a Call Arrives

Outgoing message plays after the set ring time. When caller's voice/video message is recorded, Missed Call and Answering Machine Indicators appear in Standby.



■ To Answer Call during Recording → or ●

Activate When a Call Arrives

Activate Answering Machine when unable to answer an incoming call. Answering Machine setting returns, after message is recorded.

When a call arrives ⇒ Music Answering Machine is activated and starts recording.



Note

 Answering Machine cannot be activated when memory is full.

Tip

Alternatively, press # when a call arrives.
 When answering with #, handset enters
 Manner Mode

Playing Messages

© Play/Erase Mss.

□Answering Machine1 ★
□Answering Machine2 ★
□Answering Machine3 ★
□Answering Machine4
□Answering Machine4
□Answering Machine5
□Voice Memo

Play/Delete Voice Message Window

Items with a message recorded are indicated by \star .

2 Select a message ⇒ ●

Tip

Operations during Playback

| Play Next Message | Music |
|---------------------|----------|
| Stop | Or CLEAR |
| Return a Voice Call | |
| Return a Video Call | 8 |

Tip

- Pressing in Standby also plays recorded voice messages. When there is a voice memo but no voice message, the voice memo plays.

Operations during Video Message Playback

| Play Previous/Next Message | ⊗ |
|-------------------------------|---|
| Adjust Volume | © |
| | A _{₹7} - Or ¶ _{Music} |
| Pause/Play | • |
| Stop | CLEAR |
| Return a Voice Call | \overline{Z} |
| Return a Video Call | |

Tip

To play video messages from Main Menu:

 ⊕ Tools
 ⊕ Play/Erase VC Msg.
 ⊕







Outgoing Call Functions

Show/Hide Caller ID

Add Area Code and Country Code (Prefix Numbers)

(P. 3-16)

International Calls

Enter "+" to Call Abroad

(P. 3-16)

Handling Incoming Calls

- Reject Calls
- Place Calls on Hold
- Forward Calls
- Forward Calls to Voice Mail Center

(P. 3-16)

Engaged Call Operations

- Handsfree
- Make Other Party Clearer to Hear (Hyper Clear Voice)
- Send Touch Tones

(P. 3-17)

Answering Machine

Delete Recorded Messages

(P. 3-18)

Customize

Display Settings

- Set an Outgoing Call Image
- Set Image or Video for Incoming Call

(P. 14-4)

(P. 14-8)

(P. 14-9)

- Incoming Call Alerts Adjust Ringtone Volume
- Set a Ringtone
- Set Random Playback of Melodies as Ringtones
- Set Vibration
- Set Illumination Color.
- Set Illumination Pattern
- Set Illumination to Flash for Missed Calls
- Set Handset Action When Handset Opened
- Set an Incoming Call Image
- Show Phone Book Entry Images for Incoming Calls

Answering Incoming Calls

- Set to Answer Calls by Pressing Any Key
- Set to Mute Ringtone by Pressing Any Key

Sounds

- Record Sound to Set as Ringtone or Outgoing Message
- Play Recorded Sound
- Delete Recorded Sound

(P. 14-10)

Earphone-Microphone

Audio Output

- Microphone Setting
- Answer Calls Automatically
- Save a Phone Number for One-touch Dialing from Earphone-Microphone

(P. 14-11)

Outgoing Calls

- Save Area Code and Country Code as Prefix Numbers
- Save Touch Tones
- Set Numbers after "\(\dagger \)" as Sub Address.

(P. 14-12)

International Calls

- Change International Access Code Automatically Dialed with "+"
- Change a Country Code
- Save an International Access Code

(P. 14-13)

Call Settings

- Set Reconnection Tone
- Set Noise Reduction
- Set Weak Signal Alarm
- Set Clarity of Other Party Voice
- Change Color of Illumination While Calling
- Set Outgoing Message while Call is on Hold
- Set Closing Sound Off
- End Call By Closing Handset

(P. 14-13)

Video Call Window



Video Call Indicators

| M | JTE Mute |
|-----|---|
| | Call in progress. Press A to place call on hold. Call is on hold. Press A to return to call. |
| 8 | Hyper Clear Voice High Hyper Clear Voice Low |
| A | Transmitting Audio Transmission Failed |
| V | Transmitting Video Transmission Failed |
| 2 | Sending Outgoing Image via Rear Camera Sending Alternative Image |
| ⊕ 🔷 | Handsfree ON Handsfree OFF |
| | Photo Mode Portrait Photo Mode Scenery Photo Mode Close-up |

Making Video Calls

1 Enter phone number



Phone Number Entry Window

■ Correcting Misentries

⇒ ⓒ to scroll cursor ⇒ ŒM to delete (press and hold to delete all numbers to the left) ⇒ Reenter number(s)

■ Deleting Phone Number

 \Rightarrow







3 to end call

Note

• The other party may hear a short beep when O to 9, * or # are pressed during a call.

Tip

- · Always include the area code even when dialing from the same area.
- Emergency calls (110, 119 and 118) automatically switch to voice calls.
- An error message appears when connection fails.
- Front Camera is unavailable on 840N. Use Rear Camera image or Alternative Image for outgoing image.
- If recording a TV program during a video call, charging handset may cause Camera to switch off. This depends on handset temperature and usage condition.
- Connect stereo earphone-microphone to talk with handset closed

Operations during Video Calls

| Adjust Earpiece Volume | \bigcirc or press and hold \bigcirc | |
|---|---|--|
| volume | A ₇₇₋ or \P_{Music} | |
| Hold Call | CLEAR | |
| Toggle Main and Sub Window Images | Press and hold ③ to toggle Main window image as follows: Other party's image → Your image → Other party's image (sub window off) → Your image (sub window off) | |
| Toggle Camera/ Alternative Images | • | |
| Zoom In/Out Outgoing Camera Image | ⊗ | |
| Mute Audio | Press and hold 🗓 💤 To cancel mute, press again. | |

Answering Video Calls

- When a video call arrives ⇒ <a> ✓ Alternative Image is sent.
- to end call

More Features



Outgoing Call Functions

- Show/Hide Caller ID
- Add Area Code and Country Code (Prefix Numbers)

(P. 3-16)

Handling Incoming Calls

- Reject Calls
- Place Calls on Hold
- Forward Calls

(P. 3-16)

Engaged Call Operations

- Handsfree
- Make Other Party Clearer to Hear (Hyper Clear Voice)
- Set Image Quality
- Adjust Brightness
- Change White Balance
- Change Color Tone
- Change Photo Mode
- Backlight Illumination Time

(P. 3-17)

Customize

Display Settings

- Set an Outgoing Call Image
- Set Image or Video for Incoming Call

Incoming Call Alerts

- Adjust Ringtone Volume
- Set a Ringtone
- Set Random Playback of Melodies as Ringtones
 - Set Vibration
 - Set Illumination Color
 - Set Illumination Pattern
 - Set Illumination to Flash for Missed Calls
 - Set Handset Action When Handset Opened
 - Set an Incoming Call Image
 - Show Phone Book Entry Images for Incoming
 Calls

(P. 14-8)

(P. 14-4)

Answering Incoming Calls

- Set to Answer Calls by Pressing Any Key
- Set to Mute Ringtone by Pressing Any Key
 (P. 14-9)

Earphone-Microphone

- Audio Output
- Answer Calls Automatically

(P. 14-11)

Outgoing Calls

 Save Area Code and Country Code as Prefix Numbers Set Numbers after "\(\mathbf{H}\)" as Sub Address

(P. 14-12)

Call Settings

- Set Reconnection Tone
- Set Noise Reduction
- Set Weak Signal Alarm
- Set Clarity of Other Party Voice
- Change Color of Illumination While Calling
- Set Outgoing Message while Call is on Hold
- Set Closing Sound Off
 - End Call By Closing Handset

(P. 14-13)

Video Calls

- Set Outgoing Image for Video Calls
- Redial Automatically as Voice Call When Video Call Connection Fails
- Set an Image to Appear in Main Window
- Automatically Switch to Handsfree Mode in Video Calls

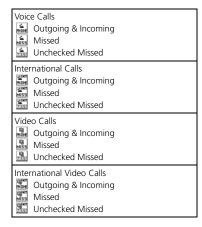
(P. 14-14)

Dialing from Call Logs

Phone numbers and dates and times of incoming and outgoing calls are saved on handset as call logs. Access call logs to return calls quickly.

Call Log Indicators

The following indicators appear in Redial, Dialed Calls and Received Calls windows.



Answering Machine Voice Messages Video Messages Packet Transmission Outgoing & Incoming Calls Appears when outside the GMT+09 time

Redial/Received Calls

⊙ or ⊙

zone.





Redial Window

Received Calls Window

Select a record ⇒ ● ⇒ ✓ or

Dialed Calls

● ⇒ Own Data ⇒ ● ⇒ Dialed Calls ⇒ •



Dialed Calls Window

2 Select a record ⇒ ● → ✓ or 🖾

Checking Number of Missed Calls

● ⇒ Own Data ⇒ ● ⇒ Received Calls ⇒ ●

The total number of incoming calls, number of missed calls, and number of unchecked missed calls appear.

2 All Calls or Missed Calls ⇒ ●

Calling

Missed Calls

Illumination flashes.

Select the "Missed Call" icon to check details or select the icon and press and hold CLEAR to turn off illumination.

Call Time & Cost

Check the total and last call times and costs.

Call cost and cost limit may be unavailable depending on your subscription.





Tip

- · Use indicated call times and costs only as a guide. The actual call time and cost may be different. Your handset may not indicate call costs depending on the service you subscribe. Indicated costs do not include consumption tax.
- When the last or total call time exceeds 199 hours 59 minutes 59 seconds, counting restarts from zero seconds.

More Features



Redial, Dialed Calls & Received Calls

- Change Font Size
- Show Ring Time (Missed Calls)
- Delete Records

(P. 3-18)

Call Time & Cost

- Reset Total Call Time
- Reset Total Call Cost

(P. 3-18)

Customize

Incoming Call Alerts

- Set Illumination to Flash for Missed Calls
- Set Handset Action When Handset Opened

(P. 14-9)

Checking Call Logs

- Notify Missed Calls with Tone (When June) Pressed)
- Change Colors of Names, Phone Numbers and E-mail Addresses in Call and Message Log Windows

(P. 14-10)

Call Costs

- Set Auto Reset of Total Call Cost
- Set a Maximum Call Cost Limit

(P. 14-14)

Speed Dial

Enter Phone Book entry number (000 to 009) and press for direct access to that entry.

- If a Phone Book entry has more than one phone number, handset dials the first number.
- 1 0 to 9 ⇒ 7 or ∞

Tomo-Den

Save up to 10 Phone Book entries to Tomo-Den for quick access.

- Tomo-Den is unavailable in Secret Data Only Mode
- Tomo-Den is available in Secret Mode. however secret entries cannot be saved to Tomo-Den

Saving Entries to Tomo-Den

1 7



- Tomo-Den Window
- - To Search from Phone Book View Phone Book ⇒ ● Search Phone Book ⇒ Select an entry ⇒ ●
 - To Enter the Information Direct input ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter items ⇒
- Select a phone number or e-mail address ⇒ ●

When a checkbox is selected, other numbers/addresses become grayed and cannot be selected. To select another number/address, first cancel the currently selected checkbox.



Using Tomo-Den

- 2 ⇔ Select an entry ⇒ CALL, S! Mail or SMS ⇒ ●

Tip

 Alternatively, press 1 - 0 in Step 2 to select a recipient.



Advanced

Speed Dial

- Cancel Entries from Tomo-Den
- Change Tomo-Den Entry Image
- To Send an S! Mail to All Tomo-Den Entries.

(P. 3-18)

Make calls while overseas

- Global Roaming Service may require prior application. Details are available online at http://mb.softbank.jp/en/global_services/global_roaming/ or contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P. 15-51).
- 840N is compatible with 3G network only.

Calling Japan and Other Countries

- 1 Press and hold 0
 - "+" is entered.
- 2 Enter country code and phone number (omit first "0" from area code) ⇒ ✓

Tip

• Do not omit the first "0" from area code when calling Italy.

Calling within the Same Country

1 Enter phone number with area code ⇒ ✓

Do not omit "0" from area code. Country code not required.





Global Roaming

- Set Operator
- Search Available Operator
- Set Priority for Operators
- Show Operator Name While Roaming

(P. 14-15)

Overview

The following services are available with your handset

| Call Forwarding | Forward calls to a preset phone number. |
|------------------------------|--|
| Voice Mail | Forward calls to Voice Mail Center when unable to answer a call. Missed Call Notification Notification (SMS) arrives for missed calls while handset was off, out of range or engaged, etc. |
| Call Waiting [*] | Place the current call on hold to answer another incoming call. Talk with two parties alternately. |
| Group Calling* | Call others during a call and talk with multiple parties simultaneously. |
| Call Barring | Select whether to restrict incoming and outgoing calls and SMS. |
| Caller ID | Select whether to show or hide your number when making calls. |

^{*} Separate application is required.

Activating Call Forwarding

<Example> Forward calls to a specified number after a set ring time

 Settings
 Setting Optional Services 🗢 🔘 🖈 Voice Mail/Divert ⇒ •



Voice Mail/Divert Window

- Divert ON ⇒ ⇒ YES ⇒ ⇒ Voice/Video Calls, Voice Calls or Video Calls ⇒ •
 - To Enter Phone Number Enter phone number 🗢 💿
 - To Search from Phone Book ⑤ ⇒ Search Phone Book ⇒ Select an entry ⇒ ● Select a phone number (twice)
- **3** No Answer ⇒ ⇒ Select a ring time 🖈 🖲

To forward calls immediately, select **Always** and press .

qiT

- If No Answer is set, press to answer incoming call before the call is forwarded. If Always is set, handset does not ring/vibrate and all calls are forwarded to the preset number.
- · Call Forwarding and Voice Mail cannot be set simultaneously. Call Forwarding for video calls is only available with Voice Mail.
- · If you activate Call Forwarding when Voice Mail has already been set, Voice Mail is canceled.

Activating Voice Mail

<Example> Forward calls to Voice Mail Center after a set ring time

- ¶ [Voice Mail/Divert Window]

 ¬ Voice Mail ON ⇒ ● ⇒ YES ⇒ ●
- **No Answer** ⇒ Select a ring time 🖈 🔘

To forward calls to Voice Mail Center immediately, select *Always* and press .

aiT

- If No Answer is set, press to answer incoming call before the call is forwarded to Voice Mail Center. If Always is set, handset does not ring or vibrate and all calls are forwarded to Voice Mail Center.
- · Voice Mail and Call Forwarding cannot be set simultaneously. Voice Mail is only available with Call Forwarding for video calls.
- If you activate Voice Mail when Call Forwarding has already been set, Call Forwarding is canceled.

Missed Call Notification

SMS notification informs you of missed calls while handset was off, out of range, engaged, etc.

Follow voice guidance.

To Play Messages

[Voice Mail/Divert Window] ⇒ Plav Messages ⇒ ● ⇒ YES ⇒ ●

Tip

Alternatively, dial 1416 to play messages.

Canceling Call Forwarding & Voice Mail

Voice Mail/Divert OFF ⇒ • ⇒ YES ⇒ ●

Change Network Password

Check Current Setting Status

Caller ID

- Show/Hide Phone Number
- Check Current Setting Status

(P. 3-20)

(P. 3-20)

More Features

Advanced

Call Forwarding & Voice Mail

- Delete Icons for Notifying Recorded Messages
- Check Current Setting Status

Call Waiting

- Set Call Waiting
- Answer Incoming Calls during Calls
- Check Current Setting Status

(P. 3-19)

(P. 3-19)

Group Calling

- Hold Current Call to Make Another Call
- Switch Parties
- Talk with Multiple Parties Simultaneously
- Talk with a Specific Party
- End Call with a Specific Party

(P. 3-19)

Call Barring

- Restrict Incoming/Outgoing Calls & SMS
- Cancel Call Barring



Outgoing Call Functions

Show/Hide Caller ID

Enter phone number ⇔ ⊚ ⇔ Notify Caller

ID ⇔ ⊙ ⇔ OFF, ON or Cancel Prefix ⇔ ⊙

⇔ ∠ or ≅

- Alternatively, enter "186" before the phone number to show your number, or "184" to hide your number.
- Show/hide Caller ID each time you dial from Phone Book or call logs (Redial, Dialed Calls or Received Calls).

Add Area Code and Country Code (Prefix Numbers)

Enter phone number $\Rightarrow \textcircled{0} \Rightarrow \textit{Prefix}$ *Numbers* $\Rightarrow \textcircled{0} \Rightarrow \text{Select an item} \Rightarrow \textcircled{0} \Rightarrow$

- Save area codes and country codes beforehand for quick access to prefixes.
- Add prefix from Phone Book entry, Redial, Dialed Calls or Received Calls windows.
- **国際発信** (International Dialing Code, 0046010) is set by default.

International Calls

Enter "+" to Call Abroad

"+" appears when you press and hold ①, indicating that the international code set in Auto Int'l Call Set. is entered.

Handling Incoming Calls

Voice & Video Calls

Reject Calls

When a call arrives ⇒ **(a)** ⇒ **Call Rejection** ⇒ **(a)**

Place Calls on Hold

When a call arrives ⇒ ¬ ⇒ To answer call ⇒ ✓

Press again to end the call on hold.

Forward Calls

When a call arrives ⇒ **(a)** ⇒ **Call Forwarding** ⇒ **(9)**

This procedure is available when Call Forwarding has been activated from Voice Mail/Divert window.

Voice Calls

Forward Calls to Voice Mail Center

When a call arrives ⇒ **(a) (c) Call Forwarding** ⇒ **(0)**

This procedure is available when Voice Mail has been activated from Voice Mail/Divert window.

Engaged Call Operations

Start Here

| [Voice Call Window] | P. | 3- |
|---------------------|----|----|
| [Video Call Window] | P | ٦. |

Voice & Video Calls

Handsfree

[Voice Call Window]/[Video Call Window] $\Rightarrow \boxtimes$ Press again to cancel handsfree mode.

Make Other Party Clearer to Hear (Hyper Clear Voice)

[Voice Call Window]/[Video Call Window] (Y)

- Press (v) to toggle setting (O s) High, Off OFF or O Low.
- Unavailable when handsfree is On or when an external device (ex. stereo earphone-microphone) is connected.

Voice Calls

Send Touch Tones

[Voice Call Window] ⇒ ® (twice) ⇒ *Dial* ⇒ ● (three times)

- To send touch tones all at once: Press and hold Send at one time \Rightarrow
- Each time you press , a touch tone sequence until "p" (pause) is sent.
- Save touch tones in advance (P. 14-12).

Video Calls

Set Image Quality

[Video Call Window] ⇒ 🏚 🖈 V. Call Select an item ⇒ •

Margarithm Only available when sending outgoing image via Rear Camera

Adjust Brightness

[Video Call Window] ⇒ 🙃 ⇒ V. Call Settings ⇒ ● ⇒ Brightness ⇒ ● ⇒

Margarita Only available when sending outgoing image via Rear Camera

Change White Balance

[Video Call Window] ⇒ 🖒 🖒 V. Call

Margarian Only available when sending outgoing image via Rear Camera.

Change Color Tone

[Video Call Window] ⇒ 🖒 ⇒ V. Call Select an item 🗢 🖲 Margarithm Only available when sending outgoing image

via Rear Camera. **Change Photo Mode**

[Video Call Window] ⇒ 🏚 🖘 V. Call Settings ⇒ ● ⇒ Photo Mode ⇒ ● ⇒

Margarithm Only available when sending outgoing image via Rear Camera.

Backlight Illumination Time

[Video Call Window] ⇒ (a) ⇒ Display Light ⇒ • All Time ON or 10 Seconds ON ⇒ (•)



Answering Machine

Start Here

[Play/Delete Voice Message Window]

......P. 3-5

Delete Recorded Messages

[Play/Delete Voice Message Window] ⇒
Select a message ⇒ ⊚ ⇒ Delete This,
Delete Rec. Msg. or Delete All ⇒ ● ⇒ YES
⇒ ●

Selecting **Delete All** also deletes a voice memo if it has been saved.

Call Logs

Start Here

| [Redial Window] | P. 3-10 |
|-------------------------|---------|
| [Dialed Calls Window] | P. 3-10 |
| [Received Calls Window] | P. 3-10 |

Redial, Dialed Calls & Received Calls

Change Font Size

[Redial Window], [Dialed Calls Window] or [Received Calls Window]

⊕
⊕
→ Font

Setting
⊕
⊕
→ Standard Font or Big Font

⊕
⊕

Show Ring Time (Missed Calls)

[Received Calls Window] \Rightarrow **(a)** \Rightarrow **Ring Time** \Rightarrow **(b)**

Delete Records

- To Delete the Selected Record
 ⇒ Delete This ⇒ ⇒ YES ⇒ ●
- To Delete Multiple Records
 ⇒ Delete Selected ⇒ ⇒ Select records
 ⇒ ⇒ ⋈ ⇒ YES ⇒ ●
- To Delete All

⇒ Delete All ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ ● ⇒ YES ⇒ ●

Selecting *Delete All* in Redial window or Dialed Calls window deletes all records from both Redial and Dialed Calls.

Call Time & Cost

Reset Total Call Time

Settings ⇒ ● ⇒ Call Time/Charge
 ⇒ Passet Total ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter
 Security Code ⇒ ● Passet Total
 Duration ⇒ ● ⇒ YES ⇒ ●

Reset Total Call Cost

Settings ⇒ ⊕ ⇒ Call Time/Charge
 ⇒ ⊕ Reset Total ⇒ ⊕ ⇒ Enter
 Security Code ⇒ ⊕ ⇒ Reset Total Cost ⇒
 ⇒ YES ⇒ ⊕ ⇒ Enter PIN2 ⇒ ⊕

Speed Dial

Start Here

[Tomo-Den Window]...... P. 3-12

Cancel Entries from Tomo-Den

[Tomo-Den Window] $\Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow$ Select a tab $\Rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$

- To Release the Selected Entry
- → Release This → → YES → ●

 To Release All
 - ⇒ Release All ⇒ ⇒ Enter Security Code
 ⇒ ⇒ YES ⇒ ●

Change Tomo-Den Entry Image

[Tomo-Den Window] ⇔ ⊕ ⇔ Select a tab
⇔ ⊚ ⇔ *Image* ⇔ ⊚ ⇔ Select a folder ⇔
⊚ ⇔ Select an image ⇔ ⊚

To Send an S! Mail to All Tomo-Den Entries

[Tomo-Den Window] ⇒ 🏚 🖈 Broadcast Mail ⇒ ● ⇒ Create S! Mail ⇒ 🖾

Optional Services

Start Here

| [Voice Call Window] | P. 3-3 |
|----------------------------|---------|
| [Voice Mail/Divert Window] | P. 3-14 |

Call Forwarding & Voice Mail

Delete Icons for Notifying Recorded Messages

[Voice Mail/Divert Window] > Erase Icon

Check Current Setting Status

 \Rightarrow \bigcirc

Call Waiting

Set Call Waiting

 Settings
 Optional Services ⇒ • Call Waiting ⇒ • ON or OFF ⇒ • YES ⇒ •

Answer Incoming Calls during Calls

[Voice Call Window] ⇒ Call waiting tone sounds 🖈 🔼 Press • to toggle between two parties.

Check Current Setting Status

● ⇒ Settings ⇒ ● ⇒ Optional Services ⇒ • Call Waiting ⇒ • Get Status \Rightarrow \bigcirc

Group Calling

Hold Current Call to Make Another Call

[Voice Call Window] ⇒ CLEAR ⇒ Enter phone number 🖈 🔽

- In To dial from Phone Book, press ∅ or ℚ, search Phone Book, select a number and then press .
- In To dial from Dialed/Received Calls, press or ②, select a phone number or name and then press .

Switch Parties

[Voice Call Window] ⇒ ● Press
to toggle parties.

Talk with Multiple Parties Simultaneously

[Voice Call Window] > While talking with one party \Rightarrow **a** \Rightarrow **Join Multi Party** \Rightarrow **9**

Talk with a Specific Party

[Voice Call Window] > While talking with multiple parties \Rightarrow (a) \Rightarrow Select Ans. Call ⇒ • Select a party ⇒ •

In the other parties are placed on hold while talking with the selected party.



End Call with a Specific Party

[Voice Call Window] ⇒ While talking with multiple parties ⇒ **(a)** ⇒ *Select Disc Call* ⇒ **(b)** ⇒ *Select* a party ⇒ **(b)**

Call Barring

Restrict Incoming/Outgoing Calls & SMS

Settings ⇒ ● ⇒ Optional Services
 ⇒ ● ⇒ Call Barring ⇒ ● ⇒ Outgoing
 Calls or Incoming Calls ⇒ ● ⇒ Select an item ⇒ ● ⇒ YES ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter Network
 Password ⇒ ●

- Emergency calls (110, 119 and 118) are available even when Call Barring is set.
- When Bar All Outgoing Calls or Bar All Incoming Calls is set, Call Forwarding and Voice Mail become unavailable.
- When Call Forwarding or Voice Mail is set, Call Barring is unavailable.
- If Network Password is incorrectly entered three times consecutively, Call Barring settlings are locked. Network Password and Center Access Code must be changed. For details, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P. 15-51).

Cancel Call Barring

⑤ ⇒ Settings ⇒ ⑥ ⇒ Optional Services
 ⇒ ⑥ ⇒ Call Barring ⇒ ⑥ ⇒ Cancel All Barring ⇒ ⑥ ⇒ YES ⇒ ⑥ ⇒ Enter
 Network Password ⇒ ⑥

Change Network Password

● ⇒ Settings ⇒ ● ⇒ Optional Services
⇒ ● ⇒ Call Barring ⇒ ● ⇒ Set NW

Password ⇒ ● ⇒ YES ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter

current Network Password ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter

new Network Password ⇒ ⊕ ⇒ Enter new

Network Password again for confirmation
⇒ ●

Check Current Setting Status

Settings ⇒ ● ⇒ Optional Services
 ⇒ ● ⇒ Call Barring ⇒ ● ⇒ Get Status
 ⇒ ● ⇒ Select an item ⇒ ●

Caller ID

Show/Hide Phone Number

Settings ⇒ ● ⇒ Optional Services
 ⇒ ● ⇒ Caller ID Notification ⇒ ● ⇒
 Activate/Deactivate ⇒ ● ⇒ ON or OFF ⇒
 ⇒ YES ⇒ ●

Check Current Setting Status

Settings ⇒ ● ⇒ Optional Services
 ⇒ ● ⇒ Caller ID Notification ⇒ ● ⇒
 Get Status ⇒ ●

Security



| PIN Settings | 4-2 |
|--|-----|
| Setting PIN1 Entry | 4-2 |
| Changing PIN1/PIN2 | 4-2 |
| Prohibiting Unauthorized Handset Use | 4-3 |
| Dial Lock | 4-3 |
| Original Lock | 4-3 |
| Disabling Keypad | 4-4 |
| Secure Remote Lock | 4-4 |
| Prohibiting Outgoing/Incoming Calls | |
| Rejecting Calls without Caller ID | 4-5 |
| Rejecting Calls from Unsaved Numbers | 4-5 |
| Delaying Ringtone | 4-5 |
| Emission OFF Mode | 4-5 |
| Secret Modes | 4-6 |
| Secret Mode & Secret Data Only Mode | 4-6 |
| Hiding Handset Data | |





Setting PIN1 Entry

Set to require PIN1 entry each time handset is turned on

- ⇒ ● ⇒ PIN Setting ⇒ ●
- 2 Enter Security Code ⇒ ●
- PIN1 Code Entry Set ⇒ ⇒ ON ⇒ • Enter PIN1 ⇒ •

Changing PIN1/PIN2

- PIN1 Code Entry Set must be set to ON before changing PIN1.
- ⇒ Settings ⇒ ⇒ Security ⇒ ● ⇒ PIN Setting ⇒ ●
- 2 Enter Security Code ⇒ ●
- Change PIN1 Code or Change PIN2 Code ⇒ ●
- Enter current PIN1/PIN2 ⇒ ●
- 5 Enter new PIN1/PIN2 ⇒ ⇒ Enter new PIN1/PIN2 again for confirmation ⇒ ●

Prohibiting Unauthorized Handset Use



Dial Lock

Prevent others from operating handset.

- 2 Enter Security Code ⇒ ●
- **3** Dial Lock ⇒

Tip

- The following operations are available even in Dial Lock.
 - Power on/off
- Making emergency calls (110, 119 and 118)
- Answering incoming voice/video calls

Canceling Dial Lock

1 Enter Security Code

● If incorrect Security Code is entered, press — and enter correct Security Code.

Tip

 If Security Code is incorrectly entered five times, handset powers off. Turn handset power on and enter correct Security Code.

Original Lock

Prevent others from accessing handset functions/data (e.g. Phone Book, Mail, etc). Select from three locks (1, 2 or 3) and customize as required.

Activating Original Lock



Lock Window

3 Select an Original Lock

Functions/data specified under the selected lock type are locked.

qiT

- To edit title:
 [Lock Window] ⇒ Select an Original Lock ⇒
 (a) ⇒ Edit Title ⇒ (b) ⇒ Edit title ⇒ (c)
- Security Code entry is requested when accessing a locked function or data. Enter Security Code to unlock and access function/ data. Original Lock setting returns when handset returns to Standby.
- Dial/Sending Mail and Incoming/Mail Disp. cannot be unlocked temporarily.



Prohibiting Unauthorized Handset Use

Customizing Original Lock

Set lock per function, group or category.

Some functions/groups are locked.

All functions in Group/Category are locked.

Customize by Function/Data

- 1 [Lock Window] ⇒ Select an Original Lock ⇒ 🖾
- **2** Select a category ⇒
- 3 Select a group ⇒ •
- 4 Select an item ⇒ ⑥
 Checked items are locked. To uncheck an item, select the item and press ⑥.

- 5 (three times)

Customize by Category or Group

- 1 [Lock Window] ⇒ Select an Original Lock ⇒ 🖾
- 2 Select a category (⇒ ⇒ Select a group)

- - To Select Lock for Category or Group

 ⇒ (a) ⇒ Select All ⇒ (●)
 - To Cancel Lock for Category or Group

 ⇒ ♠ ⇒ Release All ⇒ ●
- 4 🖾 (⇒ 🖾)

Disabling Keypad

Set Keypad Lock to automatically lock handset keys. Customize Lock settings as required.

Setting Keypad Lock

- **2** Enter Security Code ⇒
 - ► To Lock When Handset Closed

 After Closed ⇒ ⇒ ON ⇒ ●



Tip

- All keypad operations are disabled, except for answering incoming calls and turning power on/off.
- appears at bottom of Display when keypad operation is available in Keypad Lock.
- Emergency calls (110, 119 and 118) are available even when Keypad Lock is set.

Temporarily Unlocking Keypad Lock

1 Enter Security Code ⇒ 🗨

Secure Remote Lock

If your handset is lost, lock handset functions remotely from a PC or other mobile phones. All key operations are disabled except Power Key. For details, visit SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (http://www.softbank.jp), or access My SoftBank from your handset: $\textcircled{\tiny } \Rightarrow \mathcal{X} = \mathcal{I} - \mathcal{I} \mathcal{Z} \wedge (\text{Menu List}) \Rightarrow \textcircled{\tiny } \Rightarrow \textit{My} \text{SoftBank} \Rightarrow \textcircled{\tiny } \bigcirc$

Prohibiting Outgoing/Incoming Calls



Rejecting Calls without Caller ID

Incoming calls from hidden and/or unidentified numbers can be rejected.

- 2 Enter Security Code ⇒ ●
- 3 Unknown, Payphone or User Unset ⇒ ●
- 4 Reject ⇒ ●

Tip

To allow incoming calls, after Step 3:
 Accept ⇔ ⊕ ⇒ Select Ring Tone or Select Calling Disp. ⇔ ⊕ ⇒ Select type ⇔ ⊕ (⇔ Select a folder ⇔ ⊕) ⇒ Select a ringtone or image ⇔ ⊕

Rejecting Calls from Unsaved Numbers

- **2** Enter Security Code ⇒ ●

3 Reject ⇒ ●

Note

 This procedure is unavailable when Set Mute Seconds under Ring Time (sec.) is set to ON (P. 4-5).

Tip

To allow incoming calls, after Step 2:
 Accept ⇒ ●

Delaying Ringtone

Delay ringtone, for callers not saved in Phone Book (including Secret Phone Book). In addition, set *Missed Calls Display* to *Not Display* so missed calls with a short ring time do not appear in Received Calls. This can prevent you from accidentally returning calls from nuisance calls.

- 2 Set Mute Seconds ⇒ ⇒ ON ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter time before ringtone plays

Note

 This setting is unavailable when Reject Unknown is set to Reject (P. 4-5).

Tip

 Setting Set Mute Seconds to OFF cancels function and ringtone sounds immediately for incoming calls.

Emission OFF Mode

Activate Emission OFF Mode to suspend all transmissions. Incoming and outgoing calls/messages, Yahoo! Keitai, etc. become unavailable.

Repeat procedure to cancel Emission OFF Mode.

Tip

 Emergency calls (110, 119 and 118) are available even in Emission OFF Mode.



Secret Mode & Secret Data Only Mode

Activate Secret Mode/Secret Data Only Mode to view secret Phone Book entries, secret Schedule events and secret files.
Secret Mode: View all data and secret data.
Secret Data Only Mode: For Phone Book and Schedule, only secret entries appear. For image files, messages and bookmarks, all saved data appear.

Activating Secret Mode & Secret Data Only Mode

- **2** Enter Security Code ⇒ ●

Canceling Secret Mode & Secret Data Only Mode

1 In Standby, 🗖

Hiding Handset Data

Files stored in Secret Folders are accessible only when Secret Mode or Secret Data Only Mode is activated.

- Storable file types: Images, videos, received and sent messages and bookmarks (Yahoo! Keitai and PC Browser).
- Data saved on memory card or USIM Card cannot be stored in Secret Folders.
- Each Secret Folder of Data Folder has a fixed storage capacity as follows:
 - · My Picture: Approx. 2 MB
 - · Videos: Approx. 10 MB

Moving Data to Secret Folders

- Set handset to Secret Mode or Secret Data Only Mode
- 2 From a folder, select an item ⇒ **②**⇒ **Keep in Secret** ⇒ **③**

Moving Data from Secret Folders

- 1 Set handset to Secret Mode or Secret Data Only Mode
- 2 In a folder list ⇒ Secret ⇒ ●
- 4 Select a destination folder ⇒ ●

Tip

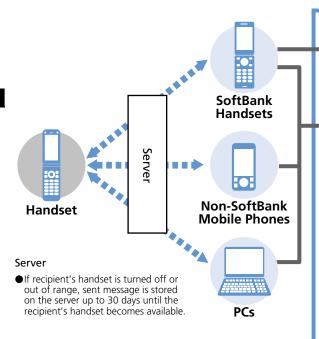
Functions available with Secret Folder data are limited.

Mail



| Overview | 5-2 |
|----------------------------------|------|
| Sending Messages | 5-3 |
| Sending S! Mail | 5-3 |
| Graphic Mail | 5-3 |
| Attaching Files | 5-5 |
| Saving Addresses to Mail Member | 5-6 |
| Using Itsumono-Mail | 5-6 |
| Sending SMS Messages | 5-7 |
| Receiving & Opening Messages | 5-9 |
| Opening New Messages | 5-9 |
| Opening Inbox Messages | 5-9 |
| Replying to Messages | 5-10 |
| Using Mail List | 5-10 |
| Handling Messages | 5-12 |
| Message Folders | |
| Opening Sent & Received Messages | 5-12 |
| Sorting Messages | 5-14 |
| Prohibiting Access to Messages | 5-14 |
| Saving S! Mail Attachments | 5-15 |
| Advanced Features | 5-17 |
| Sending Messages | 5-17 |
| Receiving/Opening Messages | 5-20 |
| Managing/Using Messages | 5-21 |





Available Mail Services

SMS

Exchange short text messages with other SoftBank handsets

S! Mail (Separate contract required) Exchange long text messages with S! Mail compatible SoftBank handsets and other e-mail compatible mobile phones and PCs. Images and melodies can also be attached to S! Mail.

Customize Handset E-mail Address.

Effective for blocking spam.

Graphic Mail

Use HTML mail to change font size/color, background, etc.

Special Template

Graphic Mail templates are awarded based on the number of sent or received Graphic Mail.

Itsumono-Mail

Save custom-created message templates.

Sending Messages



Sending S! Mail

1 Press and hold



S! Mail Composition Window

- 2 To ⇒ ⇒ Enter Address ⇒
 ⇒ Enter address ⇒ ●
 To add more recipients, Select To ,
 press and repeat the same step.
- 3 Swiet ⇒ ⇒ Enter subject ⇒ ●



S! Mail Text Entry Window

- **5** 🖾
- To Cancel Transmission
- ⇒ When *Start Packet Connection* appears ⇒ ●

Alternatively, press 🕲 during transmission.

■ If **Resend mail?** Appears

⇒ YES ⇒ ●

Tip

 Add up to 20 recipients total between To, Cc and Bcc fields.

Graphic Mail

Create html messages to change font color/size and background color. Add scrolling text, paste images, etc.

<Example> Change font size, background color, insert an image and set flashing text.

- [5! Mail Text Entry Window] ⇔

 ∠ ⇔ ♠ ⇔ ⊕ ⇔ Select a font
 size ⇔ ⇒ Enter text ⇔ ●

- - Inserting Images with Large File Size

 ⇒ Insert Mail or SubQCIF Scale Down

 ⇒ (⇒ Check an image ⇒ ●)
- 4 A ⇔ ⇔ \ \text{\text{\$\infty}\$ \ \text{\$\infty}\$ \ \text{\$\inf
- **5 a** ⇒ **o**



Sending Messages

Entering My Pictograms

- 1 [S! Mail Text Entry Window] ⇒ 🗑
- 2 🖾 or 😉 to select MyPict tab



My Pictograms Entry Window

- **3** ♦ to select a pictogram ⇒ ●
- 4 CLEAR

Handset returns to S! Mail Text Entry window.

Using Predictions

Use predictions to quickly enter My Pictograms.

<Example> Entering "はなび" (fireworks)

- The following example is in Japanese text entry mode.
- 1 [S! Mail Text Entry Window] ⇒ Enter "はなび" ⇒ 🖾
- 2 ♦ to select a pictogram
 ●
 Use ⑤ or ⑥ to toggle prediction
 candidates for My Pictograms and Mail
 Art.

Note

• Downloaded My Pictograms do not appear in predictions.

Tip

 Enter a My Pictograms category name and press

 to open a list of matching My Pictograms.

Categories

My Pictograms are categorized for quick entry of target items.

<Example> Entering "ハート" (heart)

- The following example is in Japanese text entry mode.
- [My Pictograms Entry Window] ⇒

A category appears in a list.



2 **(a)** ⇒ /*t* − ≥ ⇒ **(b)**

Use $\ensuremath{\mbox{\ensuremath{\boxtimes}}}$ or $\ensuremath{\mbox{\ensuremath{\boxtimes}}}$ to toggle page or category.

- To Enter From History
- ⇒
 ♠

 History
 ♦

 ●
- 3 Select a pictogram ⇒ ●

Special Template

Access to a Special Template (original Graphic Mail template) is awarded, based on the number of sent/received Graphic Mail (see chart below).

| 3, 30, 60, 90, 120, 150, 200, 250, 300, 350 |
|--|
| 1, 25, 75, 100, 150, 250, 400, 500 |

A notification appears when a Special Template is awarded.

- <Example> When three Graphic Mail messages are sent
- 1 (Select notification # ⇒ An animation appears.
- or CLEAR



Template List

Special Template files are saved in Templates. Templates. appears for Special Template.

Note

- Special Template files not vet available also appear in Templates. Once the required sent/received count is achieved these templates become accessible.
- · Initializing handset resets sent/received message count and Special Template access becomes unavailable again.

Tip

• To access Graphic Mail templates: □ ⇒ Templates ⇒ ●

Attaching Files

Attach the following files to S! Mail:

Images

Videos

Melodies

- Music (Songs) Account Details
- · Schedule (To Do List)
- Phone Book entries Bookmarks
- For information about image, video, melody and music files, see P. 12-2.
- 1 [S! Mail Composition Window] (Y?)
- 2 Select a file type ⇒ (⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ ●) ⇒ Select a file \Rightarrow \bigcirc
- Images with Large File Size Attach Mail or OVGA Scale Down

Note

 Copy protected files cannot be sent as attachments or output to external devices.

qiT

· To open or play an attached file: Select the file ⇒ ●

Sending Messages

Saving Addresses to **Mail Member**

Use Mail Member to group mail addresses together. Create up to 20 groups; save up to 20 addresses per group.

Mail Member ⇒ ●



Mail Member List

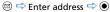
Select a Mail Member list ⇒ ●



Mail Member Window

<Not Stored>

To Enter an Address



To Save an Address From Phone Book or Sent/Received Address List ♠ \(\sigma\) Look-up address \(\sigma\) Phone Book. Sent Address or Received Address ⇒ ● Select an address $\Rightarrow \bigcirc$ (\Rightarrow \bigcirc)

Using Itsumono-Mail

Create and save message templates to Itsumono-Mail. Save up to three templates.

Saving Itsumono-Mail





Itsumono-Mail Window

<Not Recorded> ⇒ •

Enter address, subject and text

The message is saved.

Press (a) to save and send the message.

Note

 Itsumono-Mail is assigned to Shortcut Key by default. If you change Shortcut-key Setting (P. 14-27), access via Shortcut Key (19) becomes unavailable.

Tip

- Alternatively, to access templates:
- To delete: [Itsumono-Mail Window] ⇒ Select a template ⇒ 🏚 ⇒ Delete ⇒ 💿 ⇒ Delete This or Delete All ⇒ () (Enter Security Code ⇒ (●)) ⇒ YES ⇒ (●)

Default Itsumono-Mail

Set one message as the default message.

- 1 [Itsumono-Mail Window] ⇒ Select target message 🖈 🗖
- 2 Priority Set. ⇒ ●

★ appears for default template.

Tip

· If the default template is deleted, another message is automatically set as default template.

Sending Messages



Sending Itsumono-Mail

1

Default template is selected. To send a different template, manually select the template.



2 🖻

Sending SMS Messages

Send short text messages to SoftBank handsets, using recipient's phone number.



SMS Composition Window

- 2 To ⇒ ⇒ Enter Address ⇒
 ⇒ Enter phone number ⇒ ●
- 4 🖾

More Features

Advanced

Composing Messages

- Enter Address from Phone Book
- Enter Address from Sent/Received Address List
- Enter Address from Mail Member List
- Set To, Cc or Bcc
- Delete an Address
- Insert Header/Signature
- Set Default Input Language for SMS
- Delete Text
- Change SMS Message to S! Mail

(P. 5-17)

Sending Messages

- Set Priority (S! Mail)
- Server Storage Period (SMS)
- Request Delivery Report
- Save Messages to Draft
- Quit Composing and Delete Message

(P. 5-18)

Attaching Files

- Capture and Attach Still Image/Video
- Delete S! Mail Attachments

(P. 5-18)

Sending Messages

Mail Member

- Edit an Address
- Delete Addresses from a Mail Member List
- Edit a Mail Member List Name
- Reset a Mail Member List Name

(P. 5-18)

Graphic Mail

- Add/Edit Text Decoration
- Undo
- Preview Graphic Mail
- Cancel All Decoration
- Instantly Convert S! Mail to Graphic Mail
- Save Graphic Mail as a Template
- Download Templates
- Create Graphic Mail from a Template
- Edit a Template
- Edit Title of a Template
- Delete Templates

(P. 5-19)



Customize

Display Settings

Set an Outgoing Message Image

(P. 14-4)

S! Mail Settings

- Edit Header/Signature
- Insert Header/Signature Automatically
- Request Delivery Report

(P. 14-16)

SMS Settings

- Request Delivery Report
- Set Server Storage Period of SMS Messages
- Set SMS Input Language

(P. 14-16)

Receiving & Opening Messages

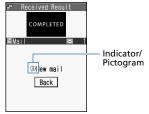


Opening New Messages

Received Result window opens for new messages.

Emotion-Expressing Mail

When a message is received, a pictogram matching the message content appears in Received Result Window and Message List. Set the Keyword setting on, to show Keyword indicators when messages include user-set keywords (P. 14-16).



Received Result Window

Pictograms

| Ò | Hurry | 9 | Advice |
|----------|----------|---------|------------|
| S | Like | Ď. | Cheer |
| T | Dislike | ALL THE | Join |
| AW. | Нарру | | Impression |
| | Angry | | Request |
| Ser. | Sad | | Notice |
| | Fun | ð | OK |
| " | Surprise | (3) | Reply |
| ? | Question | (i) | Other |

- 1 [Received Result Window] *→ Mail →* ●
- 2 Select a message ⇒ ●

Note

 By default, complete S! Mail messages (including attachments) are automatically retrieved. Transmission fees apply, depending on your subscription plan. While traveling abroad, message retrieval may incur high transmission fees.

qiT

- Alternatively open new messages from desktop notification.
- When *Mail* under *Sub-display Setting* is set to *ON*, press \bigcirc_{77} with handset closed to check the subject of new messages.
- Indicator may not always correspond to message content.
- appears if message content does not match any of the above moods or information.

Opening Inbox Messages





Folder List



Receiving & Opening Messages

2 Select a folder ⇒ ●

Inbox 1/2

□ 1005 AkimaMasami

□ 1005 AkimaMasami

□ 1005 AkimaMasami

□ 1005 6/30 NakayamaTaro

□ 1007 6/30 HakimaMasami

□ 1005 6/30 OzawaEisuke

□ 1006 6/30 OzawaEisuk

Message List

3 Select a message ⇒ **●**

© 2010/ 7/ 1 10:05
From Sak imaklasami
Saded Ovesterday
The pasta we ate yesterd
ay was delicious!
Search for a good restau
rant again!
----END----

Message Window

To check previous/next message, press Θ .

Tip

 Some attachments may require content keys to open/play the file.

Replying to Messages

- 1 [Inbox Message List] ⇒ Select a message ⇒ ⇒ 🖾
- When Original Message Has Multiple Recipients
 - ⇒ To Sender or To All ⇒ •
- 2 Edit subject/text ⇒ 🖾

Replying (Quote Message)

- 1 [Inbox Message List] ⇒ Select a message ⇒ ⇒ 🕏
 - When Original Message Has Multiple Recipients
 - ⇒ To Sender or To All ⇒ •
- 2 Edit subject/text ⇒ 🖾

Note

 If To All is selected, your address is also included in the reply. Save your address to Account Details (P. 1-21) to exclude your address as a destination.

Tip

- Attachments are automatically deleted from reply messages.
- · Quoting text is available only for S! Mail replies.

Using Mail List

Retrieve Mail List and select messages to download or forward.





Mail List

- 2 Select a message ⇒ **⊙** ⇒ *Message Receive* ⇒ **⊙**

 - ► To Receive Multiple Messages

 **Receive Selected ⇒ ⇒ Select

 **messages ⇒ ⇒ ⑤
 - ► To Receive All Messages

 Receive All

 •

Receiving & Opening Messages



aiT

- If download fails while retrieving all messages, download is canceled.
- When there is only one message, message opens upon retrieval.





Receiving Messages

Manually Retrieve Messages (S! Mail)

(P. 5-20)

Checking Messages

- Retrieve Complete S! Mail Manually
- Delete S! Mail from Server
- Read Out Messages
- Check Message Information

(P. 5-20)

Server Message Operations

- Update Mail List
- Switch Mail List Views
- Check Server Message Information (S! Mail)
- Forward a Server Message (S! Mail)
- Delete Server Messages (S! Mail)
- Check Server Memory Status

(P. 5-20)

Customize

Display Settings

- Set Image or Video for Incoming Message
- Set Image for New Message/Received Result Window
- Show New Message Info While Viewing TV

(P. 14-4)

Incoming Message Alerts

- Adjust Ringtone Volume
- Set a Ringtone
- Set Random Playback of Melodies as Ringtones
 - Set Ringtone Duration for Incoming Message
- Set Vibration
- Set Illumination Color
- Set Illumination Pattern
- Set Illumination to Flash for New Messages
- Set Handset Action When Handset Opened
- Set an Incoming Message Image

(P. 14-8)

Incoming Message Settings

- Customize F-mail Address
- Do Not Show Emotion Indicators
- Show Keyword Indicators
- Delete Keywords
- Set Priority When Receiving Messages during Operation
- Read Out Received Mail (Text to Speech) Setting
- Set Voice to Read Out Messages
- Manually Retrieve Complete Messages

(P. 14-16)

Reply Settings

Quote Message Marks

(P. 14-17)

Handling Messages

Message Folders

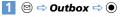
Press $\ensuremath{\boxdot}$ to open Mail Menu.

Sent, received and draft messages are saved in the locations below.



Opening Sent & Received Messages

<Example> Open a Sent Message





Folder List

2 Select a folder ⇒ ●



Message List

3 Select a message ⇒ ●



Message Window

To check previous/next message, press .

Tip

 When Outbox/Inbox is full, old messages are deleted in order of Trash Box then Outbox/ Inbox when a new message is sent or received. Unread and protected messages and Secret Folder messages are not deleted.

Handling Messages



Windows & Indicators

Check message status, attachment type, etc. by indicators.

Folder Lists



1 Cutbox ■ Secret ■ □Folder1 □ Folder2 □ Folder3 **Outbox Folder**

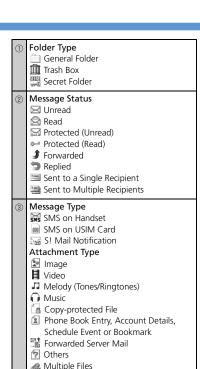
List





Message Windows





The following marks appear on indicators to inform you:

Locked Folder

→ Folder with Auto Sort Set

Protected Message

Delivery failed to Some Recipients or Some Attachments Deleted

X Delivery Failed/All Attachments Deleted

Attachment Deleted

High Priority S! Mail

aiT

- To open/play copy-protected files, save files to Data Folder.
- 🗐 appears in Subject field when Delivery Report is received.



Sorting Messages

Automatically sort incoming/outgoing messages into folders.

- [Folder List] ⇒ Select a folder ⇒

 (a) ⇒ Auto-sort ⇒

 (b)
 - ► To Sort by Address

 Address Sort ⇔ ⇔ Look-up

 Address, Look-up Group, Look-up

 Member or Enter Address ⇔ ●
 - ► To Sort by Subject Subject Sort ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter subject ⇒ ●

Tip

- Only one Inbox folder can be specified for sorting *Reply Impossible* messages.
- Only one Outbox folder can be specified for sorting Send Impossible messages.
- Only one Inbox/Outbox folder can be specified for sorting *Unregistered Add*. messages.
- Search addresses from Phone Book, Received/Sent Address List in Look-up address.

Canceling Auto Sort

- 2 Select a criterion ⇒ **②** ⇒ *Release*⇒ **③**
 - ► To Cancel a Criterion

 Release This

 YES

 ●

Prohibiting Access to Messages

Setting Mail Box Lock

- 1 🕲 ⇒ Mail Setting 🖈 📵
- 3 Select a mail box ⇒ ●
 Repeat Step 3 to specify other boxes.
- 4 🖾

Setting Folder Lock

1 [Folder List] ⇔ Select a folder ⇔
② ⇔ Folder Lock ⇔ ③ ⇒ Enter
Security Code ⇔ ③ ⇒ YES ⇔ ③
□ appears for locked folders.

Tip

- Repeat the same procedure to cancel mail box and folder lock.
- Lock Trash Box to require password for access.
- Security Code entry is required to view messages in locked mail boxes and folders.

Handling Messages



Storing Messages in Secret Folders

- Set handset to Secret Mode or Secret Data Only Mode beforehand (P. 4-6).
- Unread Messages, S! Mail with Text Unreceived or delivery reports cannot be stored in Secret Folders.
- [Message List] ⇒ Select a message
 ⇒ **(a)** ⇒ **Keep in Secret** ⇒ **(e)**
 - ► To Store a Message Keep This ⇒ ●
 - ► To Store Multiple Messages

 *Keep Selected ⇒ ⇒ Select a

 message ⇒ (repeat to select

 another message) ⇒ ⊜ ⇒ YES ⇒ ●
 - To Store All Messages in a Folder Keep All ⇒ ● ⇒ YES ⇒ ●

Returning Messages in Secret Folders to Ordinary Messages

- [Folder List] ⇒ Secret ⇒ ●
- 2 Select a message ⇒ **②** ⇒ **Put Out**⇒ **③**
 - To Return a Message
 Put Out This ⇒ ⇒ Select a folder
 ⇒ ●

Saving S! Mail Attachments

Saving Image, Video, Melody, Music and Flash® Files

<Example> Save an image

- [Message Window] ⇒ Select a file ⇒ ⊕ ⇒ Save Data ⇒ ● ⇒ YES ⇒ ●
- **2** Select a folder ⇒
- 3 **YES** or **NO** ⇒ **③** (⇒ Select an item ⇒ **③** (⇒ Select a view ⇒ **③** ⇒ Check an image ⇒ **③**))

Saving an Image Inserted in Text

- [Message Window] ⇒ **ⓑ** ⇒ Save Insert Image ⇒ **⑥**
- Select an image ⇒ ⇒ YES ⇒● ⇒ Select a folder ⇒ ●
- 3 YES or NO ⇒ (⇒ Select an item ⇒ ● (⇒ Select a view ⇒ ● ⇒ Check an image ⇒ ●))

Saving a Phone Book Entry

- 1 [Message Window] ⇒ Select contact information (a phone number, etc.) ⇒ (twice) ⇒ Phone or USIM ⇒ ⇒ New ⇒ ●
- **2** Edit each item ⇒ 🖾

Saving a Schedule Event

1 [Message Window] ⇒ Select Schedule events ⇒ ● (twice)

Handling Messages

Saving a Bookmark

1 [Message Window]

Select a link

(URL, etc.)

(twice)

Select a destination

Select a folder

Select a folder

Note

 Mail-attached phone book entries, schedule events or bookmarks cannot be saved to microSD.

More Features



Managing Messages

- Protect a Message
- Move Messages to a Different Folder
- Move Messages to Trash Box
- Delete Messages
- Delete All Read Messages
- Delete All Delivery Reports
- Report as Spam
- Delete Attached Files
- Copy SMS Messages between Handset and USIM Card
- Delete SMS Messages on USIM Card
- Change Message Color
- Add a Folder
- Edit a Folder Name
- Change Order of Folders
- Delete a Folder
- Check Number of Saved Messages
- Check Sent/Received Addresses

(P. 5-21)

Using Messages

- Edit a Sent Message
- Edit & Send a Draft Message
- Forward a Message
- Save Sender, Recipient's E-mail Address or Phone Number to Phone Book
- Call a Phone Number in Text
- Send an S! Mail to an E-mail Address in Text
- Access the Internet from a URL in Text

- Save Number/Address in Text to Phone Book
- Search Information by Keyword
- Switch Subject Field Views
- Change Message Font Size
- Search for Messages in a Folder
- Sort Messages
- Filter Messages
- Return Message List View to Default
- Switch All Unread Messages to Read Messages
- Open S! Mail Delivery Report
- Check Attachment Properties (Image File)



Customize

Message Window/Messaging Settings

- Set Message List View
- Set Auto-Play for Melody Attachments
- Set Scroll Unit
- Set Font Size
- Change Address for Reporting Spam
- Check Mail Settings
- Restore to Default Settings

(P. 14-17)

SMS Server Settings

- Change SMS Center Address
- Reset to SoftBank SMS Center Address

(P. 14-18)



Sending Messages

Start Here

| [S! Mail Composition Window] | Ρ. | 5- |
|------------------------------|----|----|
| [S! Mail Text Entry Window] | Ρ. | 5- |
| [Mail Member List] | Ρ. | 5- |
| [Mail Member Window] | Ρ. | 5- |
| [SMS Composition Window] | P. | 5- |

Composing Messages

Enter Address from Phone Book

[S! Mail Composition Window]/[SMS
Composition Window]
□ □ □ □ □ □

Phonebook □ □ □ Search Phone Book □

Select Phone Book □ □ □ Select an
e-mail address or phone number □ ●

Enter Address from Sent/Received Address List

[S! Mail Composition Window]/[SMS
Composition Window] ➡ To ➡ ♠ ➡
Sent Address or Received Address ➡ ♠ ➡
Select an e-mail address/phone number ➡
♠ (twice)
♣ Alternatively, select To and press ♠ to

open Sent/Received Address List.

Enter Address from Mail Member List

- All addresses in the selected Mail Member list are entered in the Address field.
- You must save addresses to a Mail Member list in advance.

Set To, Cc or Bcc

[S! Mail Composition Window] ⇒ To ⇒

Select an address ⇒ ③ ⇒ Change

Rcv. Type ⇒ ⑤ ⇒ To. Cc or Bcc ⇒ ⑥

- Cc (Carbon copy): S! Mail copies are sent to other addresses. Addresses in the Cc field are revealed to the other recipients.
- Bcc (Blind carbon copy): S! Mail copies are sent to other addresses. Addresses in the Bcc field are hidden to the other recipients.
- When there is no address in the To field, the message cannot be sent.

Delete an Address

Insert Header/Signature

Set Default Input Language for SMS

[SMS Composition Window] ⇒ **②** ⇒ SMS Input Char. ⇒ **③** ⇒ Japanese or English ⇒ **⑥**

Delete Text

Change SMS Message to S! Mail

[SMS Composition Window] ⇒ **(a)** ⇔ S! Mail Conversion ⇒ **(b)**

Sending Messages

Set Priority (S! Mail)

[S! Mail Composition Window] 🖙 🎃 🖈 Priority ⇒ ● ⇒ High, Normal or Low ⇒ ●

Server Storage Period (SMS)

[SMS Composition Window] ⇒ **ⓑ** ⇒ *SMS* Valid. Per. ⇒ • Select a period ⇒ •

- Specify a period the SMS message is stored in the server in case it fails to reach the recipient because the recipient's handset is out of range, etc.
- When **None** is set, the SMS message is deleted from the server after it is resent once in a certain period of time.

Request Delivery Report

[S! Mail Composition Window]/[SMS Composition Window] ⇒ 🏚 🖈 Delivery Report or SMS Report Reg. ⇒ ● ⇒ ON or OFF 🖈 🖲

When **ON** is set, handset receives a delivery report.

Save Messages to Draft

[S! Mail Composition Window]/[SMS Composition Windowl ⇒ 🏚 ⇒ Save ⇒ •

■ The message is saved to *Draft*. Messages saved in Draft can be edited and sent at a later time.

Quit Composing and Delete Message

[S! Mail Composition Window]/[SMS Composition Window] ⇒ **(a)** ⇒ **Delete** ⇒ () ⇒ YES ⇒ ()

Attaching Files

Capture and Attach Still Image/Video

[S! Mail Composition Window] ⇒ 🏚 🖈 Activate Camera 🗢 💿 🖈 Photo Mode or *Movie Mode* ⇒ ⊙ ⇒ Shoot image/video \Rightarrow \bigcirc

Delete S! Mail Attachments

[S! Mail Composition Window] ⇒ Select an attached file \Rightarrow \bigcirc Delete Att. File or Del All Att. Files ⇒ ● YES ⇒ ●

Mail Member

Edit an Address

[Mail Member Window] ⇒ Select an address ⇒ 🖾 ⇒ Edit address ⇒ 💿

Delete Addresses from a Mail Member List

[Mail Member Window] ⇒ Select an address

- To Delete the Selected Address
 - ⇒ Delete This ⇒ YES ⇒ •
- To Delete All
 - Delete All Delete All Delete All $\Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow YES \Rightarrow \bigcirc$

Edit a Mail Member List Name

[Mail Member List] > Select a Mail Member list ⇒ 🏚 🖈 Edit Member Name ⇒ • Edit name ⇒ •

Reset a Mail Member List Name

[Mail Member List] > Select a Mail Member list ⇒ 🏚 🖈 Reset Member Name ⇒ • YES ⇒ •



Graphic Mail

Add/Edit Text Decoration

- Select of the press to select the entire text.

Undo

[S! Mail Text Entry Window] ⇒ ✓ ⇒ ७

Preview Graphic Mail

[S! Mail Text Entry Window] ⇒ ∠ ⇒ □

⇒ • ⇒ □ or ⊗ to close preview

Cancel All Decoration

[S! Mail Text Entry Window] \Rightarrow \nearrow RescAl \Rightarrow \Rightarrow \Rightarrow YES \Rightarrow \Rightarrow (\Rightarrow \Rightarrow)

Instantly Convert S! Mail to Graphic Mail

- [S! Mail Text Entry Window] ➡ Enter text ➡ Press and hold ❤ ➡ ❤ to toggle selections ➡ ●
- Pictographs, graphic items, and effects are automatically selected, based on content of entered text (available in Japanese entry mode).
- Alternatively, press , select Auto and then press to convert to Graphic Mail.
- In Preview window, press (a) to toggle pictographs and emoticons on/off.

Save Graphic Mail as a Template

- [S! Mail Text Entry Window] ⇒ Enter text ⇒ ● ⇒ ⊕ ⇒ Template ⇒ ● ⇒ Save Template ⇒ ● ⇒ YES ⇒ ●
- Attached files except images inserted in text are not included in a template.
- Save up to 1,000 templates including downloads. Delete saved templates as needed.

Download Templates

Create Graphic Mail from a Template

Edit a Template

- Edit Title of a Template

□ → Templates → ● → Select a template
 → ● → Edit Title → ● → Edit title → ●

Delete Templates

- □ → Templates → → Select a template
 → ♠ → Delete → ●
- To Delete the Selected Template
 ⇒ Delete This ⇒ ⇒ YES ⇒ ●
- templates \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow \boxtimes \Rightarrow YES \Rightarrow \bigcirc
- ⇒ Delete All ⇒ ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ ● ⇒ YES ⇒ ●

Receiving/Opening Messages

Start Here

| [Message List] | P. | 5-10 |
|------------------|----|------|
| [Message Window] | P. | 5-10 |
| [Mail List] | P. | 5-10 |

Receiving Messages

Manually Retrieve Messages (S! Mail)

- Retrieve New
 Received
 Received Result window opens \Rightarrow *Mail* \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow Select a message 🖈 💽
- Press vo or press and hold CLEAR to cancel message retrieval.
- Retrieve messages that were stored on the server while handset was off or out of range.

Checking Messages

Retrieve Complete S! Mail Manually

[Message List] 👄 Select an S! Mail notification 🖈 🖲 🖈 🖾

- S! Mail notification is deleted when you retrieve the complete message.
- Manually retrieve complete messages when Message Download is set to Manual (S! Mail Settings, P. 14-17).

Delete S! Mail from Server

[Message List] ⇒ Select an S! Mail notification ⇒ ● ⇒ **Delete** ⇒ ● > Notification. Server Mail or Notifi./Server ⇒ ● ⇒ YES ⇒ ●

Read Out Messages

[Message Window] ⇒ **@** ⇒ Read Out Message ⇒ •

Press (to stop reading. Press (a) to end reading.

Check Message Information

[Message List] ⇒ Select a message ⇒ 🏚 ⇒ Mail Info 🖈 🖲

Server Message Operations

Update Mail List

[Mail List] ⇒ (a) ⇒ Mail List ⇒ (•)

Switch Mail List Views

[Mail List] ⇒ (a) ⇒ List Setting ⇒ () ⇒ Subject, Name or Address ⇒ ●

Check Server Message Information (S! Mail)

[Mail List] ⇒ Select a message ⇒ 🏚 🖘 Mail Info 🖈 🖲

Forward a Server Message (S! Mail)

[Mail List] ⇒ Select a message ⇒ 🏚 ⇒ Forward ⇒ ● → To ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter address ⇒ 🖾

Delete Server Messages (S! Mail)

[Mail List] ⇒ Select a message ⇒ 🏚 ⇒ Delete 🖈 💿

- To Delete the Selected Message ⇒ Delete This ⇒ • YES ⇒ •
- To Delete Multiple Messages ⇒ Delete Selected ⇒ ● Select messages ⇒ ● ⇒ PES ⇒ ●
- To Delete All ⇒ Delete All ⇒ • Enter Security Code \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow YES \Rightarrow \bigcirc

Check Server Memory Status

Server Mail ⇒ ● Server Mail Memory ⇒ ●



Managing/Using Messages

Start Here

| P. 5-12 |
|---------|
| P. 5-12 |
| P. 5-12 |
| P. 5-13 |
| P. 5-13 |
| P. 5-13 |
| P. 5-13 |
| |

Managing Messages

Protect a Message

[Message Window] ⇒ **②** ⇒ **Protect ON/OFF** ⇒ **③**

If a message is protected, this procedure cancels protection.

Move Messages to a Different Folder

[Message List] ⇒ Select a message ⇒ 🍙 ⇒ Move ⇒ •

- To Move the Selected Message

 ⇒ Move This ⇒ ⇒ Select a destination folder ⇒ ⇒ YES ⇒ ●
- To Move Multiple Messages

 ⇒ Move Selected ⇒ ⇒ Select a destination folder ⇒ ⇒ Select messages

 ⇒ ⇒ ⋈ ⇒ YES ⇒ ●
- To Move All

 ⇒ Move All

 ⊕ Select a destination folder

 ⊕ ⇒ YES

 ⊕ ●
- A message can also be moved to a different folder from Message window.

Move Messages to Trash Box

[Message List] \Rightarrow $\textcircled{o} \Rightarrow$ Move to Trash Box \Rightarrow $\textcircled{o} \Rightarrow$ Select messages \Rightarrow $\textcircled{o} \Rightarrow$ $\textcircled{o} \Rightarrow$ $YES \Rightarrow$ o

Protected messages and delivery reports cannot be moved to Trash Box.

Delete Messages

[Folder List] \Rightarrow $\textcircled{o} \Rightarrow$ *Delete All* \Rightarrow $\textcircled{o} \Rightarrow$ Enter Security Code \Rightarrow $\textcircled{o} \Rightarrow$ *YES* \Rightarrow o [Message List] \Rightarrow Select a message \Rightarrow $\textcircled{o} \Rightarrow$ *Delete* \Rightarrow o

- To Delete the Selected Message
 ⇒ Delete This ⇒ YES ⇒ ●
- To Delete Multiple Messages
 ⇒ Delete Selected ⇒ ⇒ Select messages ⇒ ⇒ ⊗ ⇒ YES ⇒ ●
- To Delete All
 - Delete All ⇒ ⇒ Enter Security Code
 ⇒ ⇒ YES ⇒ ●
- Protected messages cannot be deleted.

Delete All Read Messages

[Inbox Folder List] \Rightarrow **(a)** \Rightarrow **Delete Read** \Rightarrow **(b)** \Rightarrow **YES** \Rightarrow **(e)**

Protected messages cannot be deleted.

Delete All Delivery Reports

[Inbox Message List] ⇔ @ ⇔ Delete ⇔ ●
⇒ Delete All Reports ⇔ ● ⇔ Enter
Security Code ⇔ ● ⇒ YES ⇔ ●

Protected delivery reports cannot be deleted.



Report as Spam

[Message List]/[Received Message Window] (⇒ Select a message) ⇒ 🏚 ⇒ Report Spam 🖈 🖲 🖈 🖾

Header/signature is not inserted, regardless of Insert Setting.

Delete Attached Files

[Message Window] Select attached files Delete Att. File or Del All Att. Files ⇒ () ⇒ YES ⇒ ()

Copy SMS Messages between Handset and **USIM Card**

 \Rightarrow (a) \Rightarrow Phone \rightarrow USIM or USIM \rightarrow Phone \Rightarrow \bullet \Rightarrow SMS \Rightarrow \bullet Inbox or Outbox \Rightarrow \bullet ⇒ Select a folder ⇒ ⊙ ⇒ Select an SMS message ⇒ • ⇒ ⇔ × YES ⇒ •

Delete SMS Messages on USIM Card

● ¬ Tools ¬ • USIM Operation ¬ ● ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ ● ⇒ Delete \Rightarrow \bigcirc USIM \Rightarrow \bigcirc SMS \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow *Inbox* or *Outbox* ⇒ ● Select a folder ⇒ • Select an SMS message ⇒ • ⇒

Change Message Color

[Message List] ⇒ Select a message ⇒ Press and hold *

Each time you press and hold ★. the message color toggles as follows: Red → Blue → Default (Black)

Add a Folder

[Folder List] ⇒ 🏚 ⇒ Add Folder ⇒ 🌖 ⇒ Enter folder name ⇒ ● → YES or NO ⇒ Impossible, Send Impossible or *Unregistered Add.* ⇒ ● Adde auto Sort settings ⇒ (□) ⇒ YES or NO ⇒ (●)

Edit a Folder Name

[Folder List] ⇒ Select a folder ⇒ 🏟 ⇒ Edit Folder Name ⇒ ● ⇒ Edit folder name ⇒

Preinstalled folders cannot be renamed.

Change Order of Folders

[Folder List] ⇒ Select a folder ⇒ 🏚 ⇒ Sort **Folder** ⇒ ● Select a position ⇒ ●

The order of preinstalled folders cannot be changed.

Delete a Folder

[Folder List] ⇒ Select a folder ⇒ 🏚 ⇒ **Delete Folder** ⇒ ● Enter Security Code ⇒ • YES ⇒ •

Folders containing protected messages and preinstalled folders cannot be deleted.

This procedure also deletes messages stored in the folder

Auto Sort settings are also canceled when you delete a folder with Auto Sort settings.

Check Number of Saved Messages

[Folder List]/[Message List] \Rightarrow (a) \Rightarrow No. of Messages ⇒ ●

En Check number of total, unread, protected and USIM Card SMS Messages. Folder List: The total of all folders. Message List: The total of the selected folder.

Check Sent/Received Addresses

Press and hold (2) or press and hold (2) => Select an entry 🗢 💿



Using Messages

Edit a Sent Message

[Sent Message Window] ⇒ 🖾 🖙 Edit address, subject and text 🖈 🖾

Edit & Send a Draft Message

□ ⇒ Draft ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a message ⇒
 ● ⇒ Edit address, subject and text ⇒ □

Forward a Message

- Edit subject and text as needed.
- Attached files are forwarded.

Save Sender, Recipient's E-mail Address or Phone Number to Phone Book

[Message Window] ⇒ ⊕ ⇒ Address List
⇒ ● ⇒ Select an e-mail address/phone
number ⇒ ⊕ ⇒ Save Address ⇒ ● ⇒
YES ⇒ ●

- To Save to Handset
- ➡ Phone ➡ ➡ Select store method ➡

 (➡ Search Phone Book ➡ Select Phone Book ➡ (twice)) ➡ Edit items ➡ 圖 (➡ YES or NO ➡ ●) (➡ Enter entry number ➡ ●)
- To Save to USIM Card

 \Rightarrow USIM \Rightarrow ● \Rightarrow Select store method \Rightarrow ● (\Rightarrow Search Phone Book \Rightarrow Select Phone Book \Rightarrow ● (twice)) \Rightarrow Edit items \Rightarrow \otimes (\Rightarrow Overwrite or Add \Rightarrow ●) (\Rightarrow YES or NO \Rightarrow ●)

Call a Phone Number in Text

[Message Window] ⇒ Select a phone number ⇒ ● ⇒ Voice Phone or Video Call ⇒ ● ⇒ Dial ⇒ ●

Send an S! Mail to an E-mail Address in Text

[Message Window] ⇒ Select an e-mail address ⇒ ● ⇒ Compose S! Mail ⇒ 🖾

Access the Internet from a URL in Text

[Message Window] ⇒ Select a URL ⇒ ● ⇒ YES ⇒ ●

Save Number/Address in Text to Phone Book

[Message Window] ⇒ Select an e-mail address/phone number ⇒ **(a)** ⇒ Add to Phonebook ⇒ **(b)** ⇒ YES ⇒ **(c)**

- To Save to Handset
 - \Rightarrow Phone \Rightarrow o \Rightarrow Select store method \Rightarrow o (\Rightarrow Search Phone Book \Rightarrow Select Phone Book \Rightarrow o (twice)) \Rightarrow Edit items \Rightarrow o (\Rightarrow YES or NO \Rightarrow o) (\Rightarrow Enter entry number \Rightarrow o)
- To Save to USIM Card

 ⇒ USIM ⇒ ⇒ Select store method ⇒
 (⇔ Search Phone Book ⇒ Select Phone
 Book ⇒ (twice)) ⇒ Edit items ⇒ ⑤ (⇒

 Overwrite or Add ⇒ ●) (⇔ YES or NO ⇒
 ●)

Search Information by Keyword

[Message Window] ⇒ ⊕ ♀ Quick Search
⇒ ● ⇒ Enter Keyword ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter
keyword ⇒ ● ⇒ \footnote{YYSearch} ⇒ ● ⇒ Select
an item from search results ⇒ ●

Switch Subject Field Views

[Message List] ⇒ Press and hold #

- When *Mail List Disp*. is set to *2 Lines*, view toggles in the order Name → Address.
- When Mail List Disp. is set to 1 Line, or to 1 Line+Body, the view cycles as follows: Subject → Name → Address

Change Message Font Size

[Message Window] \Rightarrow Press and hold Θ

Search for Messages in a Folder

[Message List] ⇒ **②** ⇒ Search Mail ⇒ **③** ⇒ Search Sender, Search Receiver or

- Narrow down search results by repeating the search operation.
- This procedure can be combined with **Sort** or **Filter**.

Sort Messages

[Message List] \Rightarrow $\textcircled{o} \Rightarrow$ **Sort** \Rightarrow $\textcircled{o} \Rightarrow$ Select a criterion \Rightarrow o

This procedure can be combined with the Search Mail or Filter.

Filter Messages

[Message List] \Rightarrow **(a)** \Rightarrow *Filter* \Rightarrow **(b)** \Rightarrow Select a criterion \Rightarrow **(c)**

This procedure can be combined with **Search Mail** or **Sort**.

Return Message List View to Default

[Message List] ⇒ 🌀 ⇒ Display All ⇒ 🌑

Switch All Unread Messages to Read Messages

[Inbox Message List] \Rightarrow $\textcircled{o} \Rightarrow$ Read All \Rightarrow $\textcircled{\bullet} \Rightarrow$ YES \Rightarrow $\textcircled{\bullet}$

Open S! Mail Delivery Report

[Sent Message Window] ⇒ **(a)** ⇔ **Disp.**

Report 🖈 💿

Only available in Message window of a sent message with a requested delivery report.

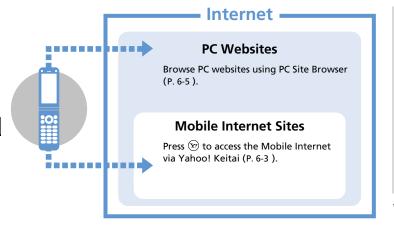
Check Attachment Properties (Image File)

Internet



| Overview | 6-2 |
|----------------------------------|------|
| Yahoo! Keitai | 6-3 |
| Connecting to Yahoo! Keitai | 6-3 |
| PC Site Browser | 6-5 |
| PC Site Browser | 6-5 |
| Connecting to PC Websites | 6-5 |
| Page Operations | 6-7 |
| Navigating Pages | 6-7 |
| Open Linked Page in New Tab | 6-7 |
| Jumping to Next or Previous Page | 6-7 |
| Selecting Links and Other Items | 6-8 |
| Bookmarks & Saved Pages | 6-9 |
| Using Bookmarks | 6-9 |
| Using Saved Pages | |
| Advanced Features | 6-11 |
| Connecting to the Internet | |
| Page Operations | 6-12 |
| Bookmarks & Saved Pages | 6-14 |

6



- SSL (Secure Sockets Laver) and TLS (Transport Layer Security) protocols encrypt data before transmission. Connect via SSL/TLS to safely transmit personal information, credit card numbers and internal corporate information, and guard against eavesdropping, data manipulation, impersonation and other Internet risks.
- When a security notice appears, subscribers must decide for themselves whether or not to open the page. Opening secure pages constitutes agreement to the terms of SSL/TLS usage. SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp., VeriSign Japan K.K., Cybertrust Japan Co., Ltd., Entrust Japan Co., Ltd., GlobalSign K.K., RSA Security Japan Ltd. and Secom Trust Systems Co., Ltd. cannot be held liable for any damages associated with the use of SSL/TLS
- * When Warning Messages is set to ON, an alert appears each time handset connects to a website using PC Site Browser.

Transmission & Information Fees

Some web contents automatically connect to different pages incurring transmission fees. Information fees may also apply.

About Security

Handset supports SSL/TLS (encryption protocols for Internet transmissions of important/sensitive information). Root certificates necessary to use SSL/TLS are saved on handset by default.

Connecting to Yahoo! Keitai

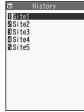


Web Page

- Select an item ⇒ Repeat to select more links.

Using Access History

1 Press and hold (🕏 🖈 History 🖈 💽



History List

Select a record ⇒ ●

Entering URLs

1 Press and hold 🕏 ⇒ Enter URL ⇒ (



URL Entry Window



Tip

- To access メニューリスト directly:
- · A confirmation for SSL/TLS communication appears each time a secure page is opened. appears in SSL/TLS compatible pages.
- · Some pages require user authentication. Select text entry field and enter your user ID or password.

Yahoo! Keitai





Yahoo! Keitai

- Switch to PC Site Browser
- Open Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu

(P. 6-11)

History

- Save a URL in History to Bookmark
- Check a URL in History
- Delete Records in History

(P. 6-11)

Using URL Log

- Use Previously Entered URLs
- Edit Previously Entered URLs
- Send URLs by S! Mail
- Delete URL Records

(P. 6-11)

Root Certificates

- Check Certificate Details
- Switch a Certificate between Valid & Invalid

(P. 6-12)



Internet

- Clear Cache
- Delete Cookies
- Initialize Memory Status of Internet
- Set Whether to Send Manufacture Number

- Set Whether to Send Referer
- Enable/Disable Cookies
- Check Internet Settings
- Reset Internet Settings

(P. 14-19)

Providing Location Info

• Provide/Restrict Location Info When Requested

(P. 14-20)



PC Site Browser

View PC websites using PC Site Browser. Scroll up, down, left or right to view entire page.

- You may not be able to view as you want depending on the site.
- Note that transmission fees may be expensive for pages with large amounts of data.



PC Site Browser Window

- Tabs
 One for each title/URL appears when viewing several pages.
- Page Toggle
 Appears when viewing several pages.
 Toggle with ().
- New Tab
 Open link in a new tab.

About Page Layout

When using PC Site Browser, two page layout types are available for each of PC Screen and Small Screen: PC Screen: Scroll pages vertically and horizontally.

Small Screen: Scroll pages vertically. Pages are laid out to fit Display width.

Connecting to PC Websites

1 Press and hold ⊕ ⇒ PC Site Browser ⇒ ●



PC Site Browser Menu

2 Home ⇒ ● (⇒ YES or NO ⇒ ●)
⇒ Select an item ⇒ ●
Repeat to select more links.



Web Page



Using Access History

1 [PC Site Browser Menu] ⇒ History \Rightarrow \bigcirc



History List

Select a record ⇒ ● (⇒ YES or NO ⇒ (●)

Entering URLs

[PC Site Browser Menu] ⇒ Enter URL ⇒ ●



URL Entry Window

2 <*NEW*> ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter URL ⇒ ● \Rightarrow OK \Rightarrow \bigcirc (\Rightarrow YES or NO \Rightarrow \bigcirc)



Advanced

PC Site Browser

- Switch Page View
- Return to Home

(P. 6-11)

History

- Save a URL in History to Bookmark
- Check a URL in History
- Delete Records in History

(P. 6-11)

Using URL Log

- Use Previously Entered URLs
- Edit Previously Entered URLs
- Send URLs by S! Mail
- Delete URL Records

(P. 6-11)



Internet

- Clear Cache
- Delete Cookies
- Initialize Memory Status of Internet
- Set Whether to Send Manufacture Number
- Set Whether to Send Referer
- Enable/Disable Cookies
- Check Internet Settings
- Reset Internet Settings

(P. 14-19)

PC Site Browser

- Do Not Show Alert When Activating PC Site **Browser & Switching Browsers**
- Select a Script Setting

(P. 14-20)

Providing Location Info

 Provide/Restrict Location Info When Requested (P. 14-20)

Page Operations



Navigating Pages

Scrolling Pages

If a page extends beyond view, use \bigcirc to scroll page.

Press \P_{77} or \P_{Music} to jump between sections of the page.

Viewing Frames

When a page includes multiple frames, select frames to view.

- 1 ♦ Select a frame
- 2 **⑤ ⇒** *Frame In* **⇒ ⑥**Navigate through the frame as you

would a page.

To exit frames, press ②, select *Frame*Out and then press ③.

Open Linked Page in New Tab

Open up to five pages simultaneously. Press
© to toggle pages.

1 [Web Page] ⇒ Select a link ⇒ 🕏
The linked page appears in a new tab.



Press ᠍ to toggle tabs.

qiT

- To open pages in a new tab other than linked pages:

 [Web Page] ⇔ ② ⇔ Window Operation ⇔ ⊕ ⇔ Open New Window ⇔ ⊙ ⇔ Bookmark, Enter URL (, Yahoo! Keitai or Home) ⇔ ⊙ ⇒ Specify page to open ⇔ ⊙ To close opened pages:
- [New Tab] ⇒ CLEAR ⇒ YES ⇒ ●
- Use CLEAN to return to previous pages stored in cache. Return through pages opened in tabs to close.

Jumping to Next or Previous Page

Once opened pages are stored in a temporary storage area (cache). Press (a), select *History Back* or *History Forward* and press (b) to go back to the previous page or proceed to the next page, without connecting to the network as long as the pages are stored in the cache.

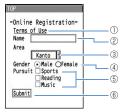
 Network connection is made when the cache is full.



Page Operations

Selecting Links and Other Items

Operate as follows when buttons and menus appear in web pages.



Link

Select a link and press

to access the linked page.

Text Box

Select a text box and press

to open a text entry window to enter text.

Pull-down Menu

Select a pull-down menu and press

to open a list of options. Use ② to select an item and press .

Radio Button

Use ② and press ② to select only one item from a range of options. indicates the item is selected.

Checkbox

Use ♦ and press ● to select multiple items from a range of options. indicates the item is selected

Command Button

Select a command button and press

to activate the assigned function.

Customize

Internet

- Set Scroll Unit/Speed
- Enable/Disable Image Download

 Set Auto-Play for Melody Attachments (P. 14-19)

Yahoo! Keitai

- Set Font Size
- Set Flash® Sound On/Off

(P. 14-19)

PC Site Browser

Set Page Layout

(P. 14-20)

More Features

Advanced

Page Operations

- Reload Page
- Save Image/Melody Files
- Save Background Image of a Page
- Send URL Links via SL Mail.
- Call a Linked Phone Number
- Send St Mail to a Linked E-mail Address.
- Access URL Link
- Save Numbers/Addresses to Phone Book
- Search Information by Keyword
- Change Page Font Size
- 700m In/Out
- Jump to Top/End of a Page
- Change Character Code
- Play Flash® from the Beginning
- Check Title, URL or Certificate of a Page
- Show Kev Guidance

(P. 6-12)

Bookmarks & Saved Pages

Using Bookmarks

Save URLs to Bookmark for quick access.

Saving URLs to Bookmark

- [Web Page] ⇒ **②** ⇒ **Bookmark** ⇒ YES ⇒ ●
- Select a folder ⇒ ●

Accessing Pages from Bookmark

- Press and hold 🕏
 - From Yahoo! Keitai Bookmark 🖈 💿
 - From PC Site Browser PC Site Browser ⇒ ● Bookmark \Rightarrow ()



Bookmark Folder List

Select a folder ⇒ ●



Bookmark List

Select a bookmark ⇒ • (⇒ YES or **NO** ⇒ **(●)**

Tip

• To access a bookmarked page from another page: [Web Page] ⇒ 🍙 ⇒ Bookmark ⇒ 🌖 ⇒ Bookmark List ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a folder ⇒ Select a bookmark ⇒ ●

Using Saved Pages

Save a page to Saved Pages to view that page at a later time without incurring connection fees

- Only Yahoo! Keitai pages can be saved.
- Viewable content is page as it was saved.

Saving a Page

- 1 [Web Page] ⇒ 🏚 ⇒ Saved Pages ⇒ ● Add Saved Pages ⇒ ● **⇒ YES ⇒ (•**)

Opening Saved Pages

Press and hold **② ⇒ Saved Pages** \Rightarrow



Saved Pages List



Bookmarks & Saved Pages

2 Select a page ⇒ ●

Tip





Bookmarks

- Edit a Title
- Edit a URL
- Send a Bookmark by S! Mail
- Check Number of Bookmarks
- Create a Folder
- Edit a Folder Name
- Change Order of Folders
- Move Bookmarks to a Different Folder
- Delete a Folder
- Delete Bookmarks

(P. 6-14)

Saved Pages

- Edit a Title
- Protect Saved Pages
- Check Number of Saved Pages
- Delete Saved Pages

(P. 6-15)

Connecting to the Internet

Start Here

| [Web Page] | P. 6-3, P. 6-5 |
|--------------------|----------------|
| [History List] | P. 6-3, P. 6-6 |
| [URL Entry Window] | P. 6-3, P. 6-6 |

Yahoo! Keitai

Switch to PC Site Browser

[Web Page] ⇒ 🏚 🖈 Switch to PC 🖈 📵 \Rightarrow YES \Rightarrow (\Rightarrow YES or NO \Rightarrow (\Rightarrow)

Open Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu

[Web Page] 🖈 🏚 🖈 Yahoo! Keitai 🖈 🖲

PC Site Browser

Switch Page View

[Web Page] ⇒ 🎃 ⇔ Change Disp. Mode \Rightarrow \bigcirc

Page view toggles between PC screen and Small screen. Small screen adjusts width to handset Display.

Return to Home

[Web Page] ⇒ 🏚 ⇒ Home ⇒ 🍥

History

Save a URL in History to Bookmark

[History List] ⇒ Select a record ⇒ 🏚 🕏 Add Bookmark ⇒ • YES ⇒ • ⇒ Select a folder ⇒ ●

Check a URL in History

[History List] ⇒ Select a record ⇒ 🏚 ⇒ URL ⇒ ●

Delete Records in History

[History List] ⇒ Select a record ⇒ 🏚 ⇒ Delete ⇒ •

- To Delete the Selected Record ⇒ Delete This ⇒ • YES ⇒ •
- To Delete Multiple Records ⇒ Delete Selected ⇒ • Select records \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow \bowtie \Rightarrow YES \Rightarrow \bigcirc
- To Delete All
 - ⇒ Delete All ⇒ Enter Security Code

Usina URL Loa

Use Previously Entered URLs

Edit Previously Entered URLs

Select URL entry field ⇒ ⊕ ⇒ Edit **⇒**(**●**))

Send URLs by S! Mail

[URL Entry Window] ⇒ Select a record ⇒ address, subject and text 🗢 🖾

E Composition (S! Mail) window opens with the URL inserted in the text.

Delete URL Records

[URL Entry Window] ⇒ Select a record ⇒

To Delete the Selected Record

Delete This ⇒ ● YES ⇒ ●

To Delete Multiple Records

⇒ Delete Selected ⇒ • Select records

 $\Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow \lor \lor \lor \lor \bigcirc$

To Delete All

⇒ Delete All ⇒ • Enter Security Code \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow YES \Rightarrow \bigcirc

Root Certificates

Check Certificate Details

 Settings
 ○ Connection Select a certificate 🖈 💿

Switch a Certificate between Valid & Invalid

 Settings
 Onnection Select a certificate ⇒ 🏚 ⇒ Valid/Invalid \Rightarrow (\bullet)

This procedure switches a valid certificate to invalid and an invalid one to valid.

Page Operations

Start Here

[Web Page]P. 6-3, P. 6-5

Reload Page

[Web Page] ⇒ 🏚 ⇒ Reload ⇒ 🍥

Save Image/Melody Files

[Web Page] ⇒ 🏚 🖈 Save File 🖈 🌖 (🖈 **Object** \Rightarrow (\Rightarrow) (\Rightarrow) Select a file \Rightarrow (\Rightarrow) \Rightarrow Save ⇒ • YES ⇒ • (⇒ Select a folder \Rightarrow () \Rightarrow YES or NO \Rightarrow ()

In To play a melody, select Play and press ●. To check file properties, select Property and

press .

Save Background Image of a Page

[Web Page] ⇒ 🏚 🖈 Save File ⇒ 🌖 (⇒ \Rightarrow YES \Rightarrow \bullet \Rightarrow YES or NO \Rightarrow \bullet To check file properties, select **Property** and press .

Send URL Links via S! Mail

[Web Page] ⇒ 🏚 ⇒ Convenient Tools ⇒ URL ⇒ ● => Enter address, subject and text ⇒ 🖾

E Composition (S! Mail) window opens with the URL inserted in the text.

Call a Linked Phone Number

[Web Page] ⇒ Select a phone number ⇒ Dial 🖈 📵

Maria Only available when using Yahoo! Keitai.

Send S! Mail to a Linked E-mail Address

[Web Page] ⇒ Select an e-mail address ⇒

Access URL Link

[Web Page] ⇒ Select a URL ⇒ ●



Save Numbers/Addresses to Phone Book

[Web Page] ⇒ Select a phone number/e-mail address ⇒ **(a)** ⇒ **Add to Phone Book** ⇒ **(b)** ⇒ **YES** ⇒ **(c)**

- To Save to Handset
 - ➡ Phone
 ➡ Select store method

 ♠ (➡ Search Phone Book
 ➡ Select an entry

 ➡ ♠ (twice))
 ➡ Edit each item
 ➡ ♠ (➡

 YES or NO
 ♠)
 ♠ Enter entry number
 ➡

 ♠)
- To Save to USIM card
- ⇒ USIM ⇒ ⇒ Select store method ⇒
 (⇒ Search Phone Book ⇒ Select an entry
 ⇒ (twice)) ⇒ Edit each item ⇒ ⑤ (⇒

 Overwrite or Add ⇒ ●) (⇒ YES ⇒ ●)

Search Information by Keyword

[Web Page] ⇒ **②** ⇒ Quick Search ⇒ **③**

To Enter a Keyword

search results 👄 🔘

- ⇒ Enter Keyword ⇒ ⊕ ⇒ Enter keyword ⇒ ⊕ ⇒ Y7 Search ⇒ ⊕ ⇒ Select an item from search results ⇒ ●
- To Select a Keyword from Previous Entries
 ⇒ History
 ⇒ Select a keyword
 ⇒
 Select an item from

Change Page Font Size

Only available when the page view is **Small Screen** in PC Site Browser.

Zoom In/Out

[Web Page] \Rightarrow $\textcircled{o} \Rightarrow$ **Zoom** \Rightarrow $\textcircled{o} \Rightarrow$ Select a magnification \Rightarrow o

Zoom is only available when PC Site Browser is set to **PC Screen**.

Jump to Top/End of a Page

[Web Page] ⇒ ⊕ ⇔ Convenient Tools ⇔ ⊕ Head of Sentence or End of Sentence ⇒ ●

Change Character Code

[Web Page] ⇒ ⊕ ⇔ Convenient Tools ⇔ ● ⇒ Change CHR Code ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a character code ⇒ ●

Use this procedure when characters of a page are illegible.

Play Flash® from the Beginning

Check Title, URL or Certificate of a Page

Show Key Guidance

[Web Page] ⇒ **(a)** ⇔ *Help* ⇒ **(b)** Only available when using PC Site Browser.

6



Bookmarks & Saved Pages

Start Here

| [Bookmark Folder List] | P. | 6-9 |
|------------------------|----|-----|
| [Bookmark List] | Ρ. | 6-9 |
| [Saved Pages List] | P. | 6-9 |

Bookmarks

Fdit a Title

[Bookmark List] ⇒ Select a bookmark ⇒ (a) ⇒ Edit Title ⇒ (•) ⇒ Edit title ⇒ (•)

Fdit a URI

[Bookmark List] 🖈 Select a bookmark 🖈 (a) ⇒ Edit URL ⇒ () ⇒ Edit URL ⇒ ()

Send a Bookmark by S! Mail

[Bookmark List] 🖈 Select a bookmark 🖈 ♠ Compose Message or Attach to Mail ⇒ ● Enter address, subject and text $\Rightarrow \boxtimes$

Example 2 Compose Message: URL is inserted in S! Mail Composition window. Attach to Mail: Bookmark is attached to St Mail

Check Number of Bookmarks

checked from Bookmark List.

[Bookmark Folder List]/[Bookmark List] ⇒ 🏚 🖈 No. of Bookmarks 🖈 📵 In the total number of bookmarks can be checked from Bookmark Folder List and the number of bookmarks in a folder can be

Create a Folder

[Bookmark Folder List] ⇒ 🏚 🖈 Add **Folder** ⇒ ● Enter folder name ⇒ ●

Fdit a Folder Name

⇒ 🏚 🖈 Edit Folder Name 🖈 💿 🖈 Edit folder name 👄 💿

Change Order of Folders

[Bookmark Folder List] > Select a folder ⇒ **(a)** ⇒ **Sort Folder** ⇒ **(9)** ⇒ Select a position 🖈 🖲

In the order of Preset folders cannot be changed.

Move Bookmarks to a Different Folder

[Bookmark List] ⇒ Select a bookmark ⇒ ♠ Move ⇒ ●

- To Move the Selected Bookmark ⇒ Move This ⇒ • Select a destination folder ⇒ ● YES ⇒ ●
- To Move Multiple Bookmarks ⇒ Move Selected ⇒ ● Select a destination folder \Rightarrow \bigcirc Select bookmarks $\Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow \lor \lor \lor \lor \bigcirc$
- To Move All ⇒ Move All ⇒ • Select a destination folder ⇒ • → YES ⇒ •

Delete a Folder

[Bookmark Folder List] > Select a folder ⇒ (a) ⇒ Delete Folder ⇒ () ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ • YES ⇒ •

his procedure also deletes all the bookmarks saved in the folder

Delete Bookmarks

[Bookmark List] ⇒ Select a bookmark ⇒

(a) ⇒ Delete ⇒ (•)

- To Delete the Selected Bookmark
 ⇒ Delete This ⇒ ⇒ YES ⇒ ○
- To Delete Multiple Bookmarks
 ⇒ Delete Selected ⇒ ⇒ Select
- bookmarks ⇒ ⇒ YES ⇒ ●
- To Delete All
 - \Rightarrow **Delete All** \Rightarrow **Output** Enter Security Code
 - \Rightarrow \bullet \Rightarrow YES \Rightarrow \bullet
- [and the state of the state of

Saved Pages

Edit a Title

[Saved Pages List] \Rightarrow Select a saved page \Rightarrow $\textcircled{o} \Rightarrow$ Edit Title \Rightarrow $\textcircled{o} \Rightarrow$ Edit title \Rightarrow

Protect Saved Pages

[Saved Pages List] ⇒ Select a saved page ⇒ ♠ Protect ON/OFF ⇒ ●

Use this procedure to toggle saved pages between protected and unprotected.

Check Number of Saved Pages

[Saved Pages List] \Rightarrow **(a)** \Rightarrow **No. of Pages** \Rightarrow **(b)**

Delete Saved Pages

[Saved Pages List] ⇒ Select a saved page ⇒ ♠ → Delete ⇒ ●

- To Delete the Selected Saved Page
 ⇒ Delete This ⇒ ⇒ YES ⇒ ●
- To Delete Multiple Saved Pages
 ⇒ Delete Selected ⇒ ⇒ Select saved
- pages → → ♥ → YES →
 - ⇒ Delete All ⇒ ⇒ Enter Security Code
 ⇒ ⇒ YES ⇒ ●
- Protected Saved Pages cannot be deleted.

Camera



| 7-2 |
|------|
| 7-3 |
| 7-5 |
| 7-5 |
| 7-7 |
| 7-7 |
| 7-9 |
| 7-9 |
| 7-9 |
| 7-10 |
| 7-10 |
| 7-10 |
| 7-12 |
| 7-12 |
| 7-12 |
| |

7

Capture still images and record videos with handset camera.

Capture Still Images/Videos

Wide Range of Image Sizes

Select image size accordingly. Use small sizes for S! Mail attachments and larger sizes for saving high resolution images.

Photo Modes

Select a mode suited to the subject/scene such as Portrait, Scenery and Sports mode.

Various Features

Features include: Auto Timer Continuous Shooting Adding Frames (P. 7-9. P. 7-10)

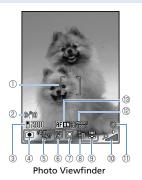
Chance Capture

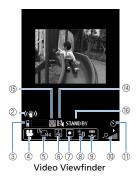
Even when video memory becomes full, continue recording video (P. 7-10). The continued portion is saved as a separate file while memory space is created by deleting the original video from the beginning.

- Lens' focus sound may be audible when using Camera. This is normal.
- Still images are saved in JPEG format and videos in MPEG4 format.
- Clean the lens with soft cloth. Fingerprints or grime on the lens may result in blurred images.
- Handset movement during shooting may cause image blurring when Shake Correction is OFF. Setting Shake Correction to Auto is recommended.
- Although Camera is made with high-precision technology, some pixels may appear brighter and some darker.
- Shooting or saving images when handset is warm may affect image quality.
- Exposing the lens to direct sunlight for an extended period may result in discoloration of photo images.
- Shutter click and Auto Timer tone sound at a fixed volume even in Manner Mode



Viewfinder Indicators





- Focus Frame (Still Images)
 A white frame appears for Auto Focus.
 Focus Frame is green when focus is locked, and red if focusing failed.
- ② Shake Correction
- Storage Location (Still Image)
 Handset
 Storage Capacity (Still Image)
 White number: 11 or more files
 Yellow number: 10 or less files
 Red number: No memory space
 Storage Location (Video)

 - Yellow: Less than 500 KB Red: No memory space
- (4) Camera Mode (17) Movie Mode
 - Chance Capture
 - Photo Mode
 - Auto Continuous Shooting
 - Manual Continuous Shooting
 - ♦ Voice Mode

- (§) Image Size

 · Photo Mode/Continuous Shooting

 · Short (1920×2560) to □ SubQCIF

 (128×96)

 · Movie Mode/Chance Capture

 □ QVGA (320×240) to □ SubQCIF

 (128×96)
- Image Quality (Still Image)
 Super Fine
 Normal
 Fine
 - File Size (Video)

 ☑ Mail attachment²

 ☑ Long time
 ☑ Up to 2 MB
- Photo Mode
 Auto
 - Auto Sports Mode
 ② Portrait Night View
 Scenery Scenery

A Light Bulb

Fluorescent Lamp

- 8 Brightness
 ♣2 -2 to ♣2 +2
- White Balance³

 Auto
- AutoFineCloudy
- (1) Zoom (16 steps)

 Minimum to Maximum
- Auto Timer
 Auto Timer set
- AF Guidance (Still Images) For AF toggle and focus lock

| 13 | AF Mode (Still Image) RFOT AF ON RFC7 Close-up RFOT AF OFF |
|----|--|
| 14 | Recording Type (Video) 聞 Normal (Video & Sound) 聞 Video only 聞 Sound only |
| 15 | Image Quality (Video) ☑ Long time ☐ Fine ☑ Normal ☐ Super Fine |
| 16 | Recording Status (Video) SIMINDEN' Recording ready Recording |

- 1 Approximate value
- 2 Available when Select Size is QCIF(176×144) or SubQCIF(128×96).
- 3 Available only when **Photo Mode** is set to **OFF** (in normal and continuous shooting modes).

Auto Save

Captured still images and videos are automatically saved to handset.

Tip

· To set so that a preview window appears after recording:

[Photo Viewfinder]/[Video Viewfinder] ⇒ 🂿 ⇒ Auto Save Set ⇒ ● ⇒ OFF ⇒ ●

Shake Correction

Camera is equipped with Shake Correction. This function reduces camera shake in 6 axial directions for still images and 2 axial directions for videos

Set Shake Correction off when not needed.

Capturing Still Images







Photo Viewfinder

2 Frame image in Viewfinder ⇒ ● When the focus locks, Focus Frame turns green and shutter is released. Image is automatically saved.

Tip

- · To activate Camera (Photo Mode):
- · Shutter clicks even if focusing fails and Focus Frame turns red.
- Focus Frame appears only when Auto Focus is set.

Photo Preview Window

Appears when Auto Save Set is set to OFF. Press to save image.



Photo Preview Window

■ To Discard Image and Return to Viewfinder

CLEAR > YES

Tip

- · Attach still images to S! Mail or set as wallpaper (P. 7-12, P. 7-13).
- · Still images are saved to Mv Picture in Data Folder. The storage location can be changed to memory card (P. 14-23).

Operations in Viewfinder

| AF Change | (5) |
|----------------------------|------------|
| AF Lock | © |
| Zoom In ¹ | (|
| Zoom Out ¹ | © |
| Open Menu | (D) |
| Toggle Camera Mode | 1 |
| Select Size | 2 |
| Quality Setting | 3 |
| Photo Mode | 4 |
| Adjust Brightness | 5 |
| White Balance ² | 6 |
| Help | 0 |

- 1 Zoom is unavailable when Select Size is set to 5M(1920×2560).
- 2 Available when **Photo Mode** is set to **OFF**.



More Features



During Shooting

- Use Camera Menu
- Set Image Quality
- Switch Color Modes
- Reduce Flicker
- Check Storage Capacity
- Set Shake Correction

(P. 7-12)

After Shooting

- Send Still Image with Graphic Mail
- Send Still Image by S! Mail
- Show Mirror Image of Shot Still Image
- Save Mirror Image of Shot Still Image
- Capture Image and Set as Wallpaper

(P. 7-12)



Customize

Camera Settings

Set Shutter Sound

(P. 14-23)

File Storage

Set Storage Location for Still Images

(P. 14-23)

Recording Videos

Mode ⇒ •



Video Viewfinder

- Frame image in Viewfinder ⇒ Recording starts.
- Recording ends. Video is automatically saved.

Video Preview Window

Appears when Auto Save Set is set to OFF. Press to save video.



Video Preview Window

■ To Discard the Recording and Return to Viewfinder

CLEAR > YES

Tip

· Video is saved to Videos in Data Folder. The storage location can be changed to memory card (P. 14-23).

Operations in Video Viewfinder

| Zoom In | (2) |
|--------------------|------------|
| Zoom Out | • |
| Open Menu | (S) |
| Toggle Camera Mode | 1 |
| Select Size | 2 |
| File Size Setting | 3 |
| Photo Mode | 4 |
| Adjust Brightness | 5 |
| White Balance | 6 |
| Help | 0 |
| | |

Tip

· Key operation tones may be recorded if you adjust zoom, etc. while recording a video.

Recording Videos

More Features



During Shooting

- Use Camera Menu
- Set Image Quality
- Switch Color Modes
- Reduce Flicker
- Check Storage Capacity
- Change Video Type
- Set Shake Correction

(P. 7-12)

After Shooting

- Send Video by S! Mail
- Show Recorded Video in Standby
- Edit Title of Video

(P. 7-12)



Video Settings

Set Shutter Sound

(P. 14-23)

File Storage

Set Storage Location for Videos

(P. 14-23)

Various Features

Continuous Shooting

Shoot up to 20 still images continuously. Automatic continuous shooting mode: Automatically shoots a set number of images at set intervals after you release the shutter. Manual continuous shooting mode: Shoots a set number of images, each of which is shot by releasing the shutter manually.

- See P. 14-23 for details on setting interval/ number of shots for Continuous Shooting.
- [Photo Viewfinder]/[Video Viewfinderl ⇒ 🕕 ⇒ 🚇 or 🖭 ⇒



Continuous Shooting Viewfinder (Manual)

Frame image in Viewfinder ⇒ • Image is automatically saved.

Thumbnail Preview Window

Appears when Auto Save Set is set to OFF. Press and hold **(27)**, **Save** or **Mirror Save** and press to save all still images.



Thumbnail Preview Window

■ To Discard Shot Images and Return to Viewfinder

CLEAR > YES

Tip

 Image size can only be set to CIF(352×288), WQVGA(240×427), QVGA V.(240×320), QCIF(176×144) or SubQCIF(128×96).

Add Frames to Images

- [Photo Viewfinder] ⇒ 🕏 ⇒ Select Frame ⇒ • Select a folder ⇒ • Select a frame ⇒
- Compose image in the frame ⇒ Image is automatically saved.

Framed Image Preview Window

Appears when Auto Save Set is set to OFF. Press to save image.



Framed Image Preview Window

■ To Discard Shot Images and Return to Viewfinder

CLEAR > YES



Auto Timer

- Auto Timer returns to OFF after shooting.
- [Photo Viewfinder]/[Video Viewfinderl ⇒ 🏚 ⇒ Auto Timer \Rightarrow \bigcirc
- $ON \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow \text{Enter time} \Rightarrow \bigcirc$
 - Frame image in Viewfinder ⇒ Auto Timer starts countdown, and Illumination flashes blue. About five seconds before shooting, a countdown tone sounds and Illumination flashes rapidly.

To stop Auto Timer, press or CLEAR.

- For Still Images Images are automatically saved.
- For Videos (•)

Recording ends. Videos are automatically saved.

qiT

· To shoot manually during Auto Timer countdown, press .

Chance Capture

Continue recording video even when memory is full.

- [Photo Viewfinder]/[Video Viewfinder] $\Rightarrow \square \Rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$
- Frame image in Viewfinder ⇒ Recording starts. When the available recording time is over, the remaining time indication flashes
- Recording ends. Video is automatically saved.

Note

· When recorded video exceeds available memory, handset saves the maximum recordable time from the end of recording. Initial portion is deleted.

Recording Only Sound

Record only audio in Movie Mode (Voice Mode).

- 1 [Photo Viewfinder]/[Video Viewfinderl ⇒ □ ⇒ • • •
- Recording starts. 3 Recording ends. Video is automatically saved.

qiT

2 🔘

 To activate Voice Mode from Main Menu:



Advanced

After Shooting

- View Images
- Save One Frame
- Save Only Selected Images
- Save as Animation
- Open an Image as Mirror Image
- Send Still Image with Graphic Mail
- Attach to S! Mail
- Change Frame before Saving Image

(P. 7-13)

Customize

Camera Settings

- Set Interval for Continuous Shooting
- Set Number of Shots for Continuous Shooting

(P. 14-23)

File Storage

• Set Storage Location for Still Images/Videos

(P. 14-23)

During Shooting

Start Here

[Photo Viewfinder]P. 7-5 [Video Viewfinder]P. 7-7

Use Camera Menu

[Photo Viewfinder]/[Video Viewfinder] 🖈 Select an item ⇒ ●

Set Image Quality

[Photo Viewfinder]/[Video Viewfinder] => (a) ⇒ Quality Setting ⇒ () ⇒ Select an item 🖈 🖲

Switch Color Modes

[Photo Viewfinder]/[Video Viewfinder] 👄 (**•**)

Reduce Flicker

[Photo Viewfinder]/[Video Viewfinder] => (a) ⇒ Camera Settings ⇒ () ⇒ Flicker ⇒ ♠ Auto. Mode 1(50Hz) or Mode 2(60Hz). \Rightarrow \bigcirc

Check Storage Capacity

[Photo Viewfinder]/[Video Viewfinder] ->

Change Video Type

[Video Viewfinder] ⇒ (a) ⇒ Movie Type Set ⇒ ● Normal. Video or Voice ⇒ ●

Set Shake Correction

[Photo Viewfinder]/[Video Viewfinder] => **(a)** ⇒ Shake Correction ⇒ **(9)** ⇒ Auto or OFF 🖈 💿

After Shooting

Start Here

| [Photo Preview Window] | .Р. | 7-5 |
|-------------------------------|-----|-----|
| [Video Preview Window] | .Р. | 7-7 |
| [Thumbnail Preview Window] | .Р. | 7-9 |
| [Framed Image Preview Window] | .Р. | 7-9 |

Send Still Image with Graphic Mail

[Photo Preview Window] ⇒ 🖾 → Insert Image ⇒ ● ⇒ Insert Mail or SubOCIF Scale Down ⇒ • Create Graphic Mail $\Rightarrow \boxtimes$

Send Still Image/Video by S! Mail

- To Send Still Image by S! Mail [Photo Preview Window] ⇒ 🖾 → Attach Image 🖈 🖲 (🖈 Attach Mail, OVGA Scale Down or VGA Scale Down ⇒ (●)|⇒ Compose S! Mail ⇒ 🖾
- To Send Video by S! Mail [Video Preview Window] ⇒ 🖾 ⇔ Compose S! Mail ⇒ 🖾
- Nideo files exceeding the size limit are not attached.

Show Mirror Image of Shot Still Image

[Photo Preview Window] ⇒ **(a)** ⇒ *Mirror* Display 🖈 🖲

▶ To return image to its original state: [Photo Preview Window] 🖈 🏚 🖈 Normal Display 🖈 💿

Save Mirror Image of Shot Still Image

[Photo Preview Window] ⇒ (a) ⇒ Mirror Save 🖈 🖲

Advanced Features

Capture Image and Set as Wallpaper

Set image to other function windows (*Dialing, Mail Sending*, etc.).

Show Recorded Video in Standby

[Video Preview Window] ➡ ⑥ ➡ Set as Stand-by ➡ ⑥

Edit Title of Video

View Images

[Thumbnail Preview Window] ⇒ Select an image ⇒ 🖾

Press to switch to the previous/next image.

Save One Frame

[Thumbnail Preview Window]

⇒ Select an image

• • • • ⇒ Save or Mirror Save

• • • •

Save Only Selected Images

[Thumbnail Preview Window]

Select an image

Repeat the same step

Select are Mirror Save

Select a checked image and press

to

Save as Animation

cancel the selection.

Open an Image as Mirror Image

[Thumbnail Preview Window] ⇒ **(a)** ⇔ *Mirror Display* ⇒ **(e)**

Send Still Image with Graphic Mail

[Thumbnail Preview Window] ⇒ Select an image ⇒ ⊚ (twice) ⇒ *Insert Image* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Insert Mail* or *SubQCIF Scale Down* ⇒ ⊕ ⇒ Compose Graphic Mail ⇒ ⊚

Attach to S! Mail

[Thumbnail Preview Window]

Select an image

(twice)

Attach Image

(twice)

Attach Mail or QVGA Scale Down

(twice)

Compose S! Mail

(twice)

(twice)

Compose S! Mail

(twice)

(twice)

(twice)

Compose S! Mail

(twice)

(twice

Change Frame before Saving Image

TV



| About TV | 8-2 |
|----------------------------|------|
| Initial Setup | 8-3 |
| TV Windows | 8-4 |
| Watching TV | 8-5 |
| Watching TV | |
| Data Broadcasts (Japanese) | 8-6 |
| Program Guide | |
| Recording/Playing Programs | 8-8 |
| Recording Programs | |
| Playing Recorded Programs | 8-8 |
| View/Record Timer | 8-10 |
| Setting View Timer | 8-10 |
| Setting Record Timer | 8-10 |
| Advanced Features | 8-12 |
| Channel Settings | 8-12 |
| Watching TV | 8-12 |
| Data Broadcasts | 8-12 |
| TV Link | 8-13 |
| Recording Programs | 8-13 |
| Playing Programs | 8-14 |
| View/Record Timer | |

Handset supports One Seg Digital TV for cellular phones.

• One Seg is available only in Japan.

One Seg

One Seg is a digital TV broadcasting service for mobile devices. It uses one segment of the terrestrial digital band for TV and data broadcasts that you enjoy at home, on your handset.



Data Broadcasts

Enjoy data broadcasts while watching TV. Access program-related information and even participate in the program (P. 8-6).

Record Programs

Record a program on memory card while viewing it and enjoy it again at a later time (P. 8-8).

View and Record Timer

Book programs you want to view/record. Program Guide can be used for booking programs (P. 8-10).

Quick Info

Sender and subject information appears for new message while TV is active (P. 14-5).

Precautions

- Never watch TV while riding a bicycle, motorcycle or driving a car. You may not hear the sounds around you clearly, or TV image/sound may distract you creating the risk of accident. Even while walking, pay attention to the traffic around you. Be especially careful at railway crossings and pedestrian crosswalks.
- TV image/sound may be affected if a call or message is received while watching TV.
- TV information (TV links or data you entered in Data Broadcast Mode) saved on handset cannot be transferred to another handset when you change your handset to another model or when it is repaired. Keep a memo of necessary information.
- TV is available when USIM Card is inserted and with a valid SoftBank contract.
- TV antenna is built into handset. If image quality does not improve, move handset away from body or change locations.

- · Areas far from signal towers
- Mountain areas or places beside tall buildings
- In tunnels, underground malls or buildings with a lot of signal obstructions
- For more information on One Seg services, visit the following website:

The Association for Promotion of Digital Broadcasting

From PC: http://www.dpa.or.jp/ From handset: http://www.dpa.or.jp/1seg/k/ (Japanese)

When You First Activate TV

The first time you activate TV, the following information appears.

- How to switch between Portrait and Landscape View
- Functions unavailable in Landscape View Read information then press •, select **YES**, and press •. If **NO** is selected, information no longer appears when activating TV.

Operating in Landscape View

Multi Selector for selecting channels or adjusting the volume is operated the same way in both Portrait and Landscape View.

Initial Setup

Configure channel settings for your area and save stations to a channel list.

Stations for the area are saved to a channel list.

Tip

 If signals from stations of the selected area are difficult to receive, search for stations using the *Automatic* option.

TV Windows



Landscape View



① Quick Info

Ticker scrolls across top of Display for new messages (P. 14-5).

- ② Channel
- ③ Program Title
- Subtitles
- Signal Strength
 - **≝** Strong
 - **™** Moderate
 - **™** Weak
 - 岗 Out of Broadcasting Area
- 6 Subtitle Data
 - Subtitles Available
- ⑦ Volume
- ® TV Power Saving
 - TV Power Saving Active
- Recording Status
 - Recording
 - Timer Recording Activated
 - **THRUSE** Recording Paused
- Data Broadcast
- TV View Mode
 - Image Mode

Data Broadcast Mode

More Features



Channel Settings

- Save Stations to a Channel List Automatically
- Save Stations of a Different Area to a Channel List
- Switch Channel Lists

(P. 8-12)



Customize

Channel List

- Change Title of Channel List
- Delete a Channel List
- Assign Channels to Remote Control Numbers
- Delete a Channel

(P. 14-21)

Other Settings

- Check TV Settings
- Reset Channel Settings
- Clear Data Broadcast Memory
- Reset TV Settings

(P. 14-22)

Watching TV



TV Window

- 2 Use Keypad to select a channel Press ★ for channel 10, ① for channel 11, and # for channel 12.
- TV ⇒ YES ⇒ ●
 Follow the same step to end TV in

Tip

Portrait view.

TV Operations

| Change Channel in Order | ⊖ |
|---|--|
| Automatically Search for Receivable Channels | Press and hold • Press or □□□ to stop search |
| Adjust Volume | \bigcirc or press and hold \bigcirc |
| | A _{₹7-} or √music |
| | Press and hold \P_{77} -or press and hold \P_{Music} |
| Mute | CLEAR |
| Toggle Portrait and Landscape | or press and hold 9 |
| Show/Hide Subtitles ¹ | Press and hold 🖊 |
| Toggle Windows ² | Press and hold ∠ Windows toggle as follows: Data Broadcast → Image & Data Broadcast → Image & Subtitles & Data Broadcast |
| Switch to Data Broadcast Mode ² | |

- 1 Available in Landscape View.
- 2 Available in Portrait View.

Taking Calls While Watching TV

When a call arrives or when Alarm or Schedule Alarm is activated while watching TV, TV is interrupted to receive the call, etc. TV resumes after call or function ends.

8

7

Data Broadcasts (Japanese)

Data broadcasts are available while watching TV in Portrait view. Access various kinds of program-related and other information in Data Broadcast Mode.

1 [TV Window] ⇒ ∠



Data Broadcast Mode is activated.

If a confirmation for Internet access appears, select **YES** and press **(e)** to access the Internet. Select **YES** (**By default**) and confirmation no longer appears.

TV Link Operations Select a Link (<u>0</u>) Confirm Selection of a (•) Link Switch Pages 0 Previous Page* CLEAR **Togale Windows** Press and hold 🕜 Windows toggle as follows: Data Broadcast → Image & Data Broadcast → Image & Subtitles & Data Broadcast Switch to TV ~ Mode

* Available when connected to a data broadcast website.

Note

- Viewing data broadcast information requires no fees. However, accessing Internet links will incur transmission fees.
- Data broadcasts are unavailable in Landscape view.

Program Guide

 Use Program Guide to set timer to record/activate programs.



See Program Guide help for further operations.

Before first using Program Guide, configure initial settings and agree to the terms of use. Follow the onscreen instructions

More Features

Advanced

Watching TV

- Show Program Information
- Adjust Brightness
- Switch Main & Sub Audio
- Switch Audio Channels
- Show Current Channel List Information.
- Add Current Station to Channel List
- Select a Program

(P. 8-12)

Data Broadcasts

- Reload Page Accessed from Data Broadcast
- Check Certificate for SSL Page
- Exit Page and Return to Data Broadcast

(P. 8-12)

TV Link

- Save TV Links
- Access Pages/Information from TV Links
- Show Details of a TV Link
- Show Number of Saved TV Links
- Delete TV Links

(P. 8-13)

Customize

Image & Sound

- Set Subtitle Display
- Show/Hide Icons in Landscape View
- Save Battery by Dimming Backlight
- Set Sound On While Handset Closed
- Keep Backlight On When Viewing TV
- Set Backlight Duration for Viewing TV

(P. 14-21)

Data Broadcasts

- Set Whether to Show Images in Pages Accessed from Data Broadcasts
- Enable/Disable Sound Effects of Data Broadcasts
- Show Confirmation Window Again

(P. 14-22)

°

2



Recording/Playing Programs

Recording Programs

TV programs can be recorded on memory card while you are watching them.

- Data broadcast information does not appear when playing recorded programs.
- 1 [TV Window] ⇒ Press and hold ⊠ Recording starts.
 - To Capture a Screenshot ⇒ 🖾

Captured screenshots are saved to *TV* in Data Folder

2

Recording ends.

■ When Memory Becomes Full Recording ends and the recorded portion is saved.

Note

- The channel remains fixed during recording.
- Recording certain programs is restricted. If a restriction is activated while recording a program, recording automatically ends, and the part that has been recorded so far is saved.
- When appears to indicate handset is out of the broadcasting area, recording is paused.
 When the signal strength recovers to weak or better, recording automatically resumes.
- Recording continues even if handset is closed.
 However, this may affect signal reception.
- Recordings that you make are for personal use only. Other uses require the permission of the copyright holder.

Playing Recorded Programs

2 Video ⇒ ● ⇒ microSD ⇒ ●



Recorded Program List

- To View Captured Screenshots

 ⇒ Image ⇒ ⇒ Select a folder ⇒ ●
- **3** Select a file ⇒



Recorded Program Playback Window

■ To Stop Playback

Tip

· If a program was stopped partway through, resume playback from that point. Select YES and press .

Playback Operations

| Pause/Play | |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| Adjust Volume | O or press and hold |
| | A _{₹7-} Or V _{Music} |
| | Press and hold \P_{77} - or press and hold \P_{Music} |
| Mute | (v) |
| Fast Play ¹ | ⊗ |
| Frame Forward | (a) during pause |
| Skip Ahead 30 Seconds ² | Press and hold ③ |
| Skip Back 30 Seconds ² | Press and hold ⊙ |
| Toggle Portrait and Landscape View | or press and hold |
| Show/Hide Subtitles | Press and hold 🔼 |

1 Toggle normal and fast play.

2 Available when recorded program is 30 seconds or more.

More Features

Advanced

Recording Programs

- Edit Title of a Recorded Program
- Reset Title of a Recorded Program
- Switch Views of Recorded Program List
- Check Information on a Recorded Program
- Check Volume of Recorded Programs Delete Recorded Programs

(P. 8-13)

Playing Programs

Specify Point to Start Playback

(P. 8-14)

Customize

Recording Programs

Continue/End Recording at Low Battery

(P. 14-22)

View/Record Timer

Setting View Timer



Booking Program List

2 **(a)** ⇒ New ⇒ **(9)**

Edit booked Program

© 2010/ 7/ 115:30

ENANC Stored>
ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored>

ENANC Stored

View Timer Setting Window

3 ∅ ⇒ ⊙

► To Select a Date from Calendar

Choose Date

○ ○ Select a date

○ ○ □ Enter time □ ○

6 ⊠

Tip

 When the set time arrives, alarm sounds for about five minutes and information (start date/time, channel, program title and animation) appears. Press any key to stop alarm tone.

Setting Record Timer



Timer Recording List



Record Timer Setting Window

3 ∅ ⇒ ⊙

Enter date and time to start/end recording.

- To Enter Date Manually Enter Date ⇒ • Enter date and time to start and end recording \Rightarrow 📵
- To Select a Date from Calendar Choose Date ⇒ • Select a date ⇒ • Enter time ⇒ •
- Arr \Rightarrow lacktriangle \Rightarrow ON or OFF \Rightarrow lacktriangle
- 6 🖾 (⇒ YES or YES (Confirm Once) ⇒ (●)

Note

 If multiple recordings are set back-to-back (same end and start times), the first recording ends ahead of its set end time

Tip

· One minute before recording starts, alarm sounds for about two seconds. Information appears on Display (start and end dates and times, channel, program title and animation) and TV activates. Recording starts at the set start time.

More Features

Advanced

View/Record Timer

Select a Timer Alarm Tone

- Enter Title of Booked Program
- Set Regular Activation of View or Record Timer
- Set Timer Alarm Volume
- Activate TV Directly from Timer Alarm Notification Window
- Set Priority at Recording Start Time When a TV & Music Group Function is Active
- Edit View/Record Timer Settings
- Change Order of Booked Programs
- Delete Booked Programs
- Check Volume of Recorded Programs
- Check Result of Timer Recording

(P. 8-14)



Channel Settings

Save Stations to a Channel List Automatically

- **(a)** \Rightarrow *TV* \Rightarrow **(b)** \Rightarrow *Channel Settings* \Rightarrow **(c)** \Rightarrow *Automatic* \Rightarrow **(c)** \Rightarrow *YES* \Rightarrow **(c)** \Rightarrow Enter title \Rightarrow **(c)**
- When a Remote Control Number applies to two or more channels, select an area manually.

Save Stations of a Different Area to a Channel List

♠ ⇒ TV ⇔ ♠ ⇒ Channel List ⇔ ♠ ⇒
 Not Stored ⇔ ♠ ⇒ Channel Settings ⇒
 ♠ ⇒ Select Area ⇔ ♠ ⇒ Select area ⇒
 ♠ ⇒ Select prefecture/city ⇔ ♠ ⇒ YES
 ♠

Switch Channel Lists

Watching TV

Start Here

[TV Window]P. 8-5

Show Program Information

[TV Window] \Rightarrow \bigcirc Program Info \Rightarrow \bigcirc

Adjust Brightness

Switch Main & Sub Audio

[TV Window] \Rightarrow **②** \Rightarrow **Sound** \Rightarrow **③** \Rightarrow **Main/Sub Sound** \Rightarrow **③** \Rightarrow Select an audio output option \Rightarrow **③**

Switch Audio Channels

[TV Window] $\Rightarrow \textcircled{0} \Rightarrow Sound \Rightarrow \textcircled{0} \Rightarrow Sound Switch \Rightarrow \textcircled{0} \Rightarrow Select an audio channel <math>\Rightarrow \textcircled{0}$

Sound Switch is available when there is more than one audio channel.

Show Current Channel List Information

[TV Window] \Rightarrow **(a)** \Rightarrow **Channel** \Rightarrow **(b)** \Rightarrow **Channel** Info \Rightarrow **(c)**

Add Current Station to Channel List

 $[TV Window] \Rightarrow \textcircled{o} \Rightarrow \textit{Channel} \Rightarrow \textcircled{o} \Rightarrow \\ \textit{Add Channel} \Rightarrow \textcircled{o} \Rightarrow \textit{YES} \Rightarrow \textcircled{o}$

► This function is useful when you find new stations via auto-search (press and hold ③).

Select a Program

[TV Window] ⇔ **③** ⇔ **Channel** ⇔ **③** ⇔ **Tune Service** ⇔ **⑤** ⇔ Select a service (program) ⇔ **⑥**

Tune Service is available when more than one service (program) is broadcast from the same station.

Data Broadcasts

Start Here

[Data Broadcast Mode Window].....P. 8-6

Reload Page Accessed from Data Broadcast

Check Certificate for SSL Page

[Data Broadcast Mode Window]

→

→

Data Broadcast
→
→
Show Certificate

→
→

Exit Page and Return to Data Broadcast

[Data Broadcast Mode Window] ⇒ ⑥ ⇒ Data Broadcast ⇒ ⑥ ⇒ Back to Data BC ⇒ ⑥

TV Link

Start Here

[Data Broadcast Mode Window].....P. 8-6

Save TV Links

[Data Broadcast Mode Window] ⇒ Select an item ⇒ ● (⇒ YES or YES (By default) ⇒ ●)

Some TV links may have expiration dates.

Access Pages/Information from TV Links

- Types of TV links are indicated by the following icons:
 - Memo information
 - Data broadcast site

Show Details of a TV Link

Show Number of Saved TV Links

 $\textcircled{\scriptsize 0} \Rightarrow \textit{TV} \Rightarrow \textcircled{\scriptsize 0} \Rightarrow \textit{TV Link} \Rightarrow \textcircled{\scriptsize 0} \Rightarrow \textcircled{\scriptsize 0} \Rightarrow \\ \textit{No. of TVlink} \Rightarrow \textcircled{\scriptsize 0}$

Delete TV Links

- $\textcircled{\scriptsize \bullet} \Rightarrow \textit{TV} \Rightarrow \textcircled{\scriptsize \bullet} \Rightarrow \textit{TV Link} \Rightarrow \textcircled{\scriptsize \bullet} \Rightarrow \mathsf{Select}$ a TV link $\Rightarrow \textcircled{\scriptsize \bullet}$
- To Delete the Selected TV Link
 ⇒ Delete This ⇒ ⇒ YES ⇒ ●
- To Delete Multiple TV Links
- ⇒ Delete selected ⇒ ⇒ Select a TV link ⇒ ● ⇒ Repeat step of selecting TV link ⇒ ⊜ ⇒ YES ⇒ ●
- To Delete All
- ⇒ Delete All ⇒ ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ ● ⇒ YES ⇒ ●

Recording Programs

Start Here

[Recorded Program List]......P. 8-8

Edit Title of a Recorded Program

[Recorded Program List] \Rightarrow Select a program \Rightarrow $\textcircled{o} \Rightarrow$ Edit Title \Rightarrow $\textcircled{o} \Rightarrow$ Edit title \Rightarrow o

Reset Title of a Recorded Program

[Recorded Program List]

Select a program

①

Initialize Title

O

YES

●

Switch Views of Recorded Program List

[Recorded Program List] ⇒ **(a)** ⇔ *Switch List* ⇒ **(b)** ⇔ *Title* or *Title+Image* ⇒ **(b)**

Check Information on a Recorded Program

[Recorded Program List] \Rightarrow Select a program \Rightarrow $\textcircled{o} \Rightarrow$ Show Info \Rightarrow o

Check Volume of Recorded Programs

[Recorded Program List] \Rightarrow **(a)** \Rightarrow **Check Memory** \Rightarrow **(b)**

Delete Recorded Programs

[Recorded Program List] 🖈 Select a program 🖈 🍙

- To Delete the Selected Program Delete This $\Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow YES \Rightarrow \bigcirc$
- To Delete Multiple Programs
- ➡ Multiple-choice ➡ ➡ Select a file ➡ (repeat to select another file) \Rightarrow Delete ⇒ ● YES ⇒ ●
- To Delete All
 - ⇒ Delete All ⇒ Enter Security Code
 - ⇒ () ⇒ YES ⇒ ()

Playing Programs

Start Here

[Recorded Program Playback Window]P. 8-8

Specify Point to Start Playback

[Recorded Program Playback Window] => \square \Rightarrow \bigcirc Location \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow \bigcirc to specify point 🖈 🖲

View/Record Timer

Start Here

| [Booking Program List] | P. 8-10 |
|-------------------------------|---------|
| [View Timer Setting Window] | P. 8-10 |
| [Timer Recording List] | P. 8-10 |
| [Record Timer Setting Window] | P. 8-10 |

Select a Timer Alarm Tone

[View Timer Setting Window] ⇒ 🔊 ⇒ 💿 ⇒ Select a folder ⇒ • (⇒ Select a sub folder ⇒ ●) ⇒ Select an alarm tone ⇒ ●

Enter Title of Booked Program

[View Timer Setting Window]/[Record Timer Setting Window] ⇒ IIII ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter program title 🗢 💿

Set Regular Activation of View or Record Timer

[View Timer Setting Window]/[Record Timer Setting Window] ⇒ 🗿 ⇒ 🍥 ⇒ 1 Time, Daily or Select Day ⇒ ●

When **Select Day** is specified, select days of the week and press .

Set Timer Alarm Volume

[View Timer Setting Window]/[Record Timer Setting Windowl ⇒ 🛱 ⇒ 💿 🕏 🖏 to adjust volume 🖈 💿

Activate TV Directly from Timer Alarm Notification Window

[View Timer Setting Window] ⇒ 🗂 ⇒ 💿 ⇒ ON or OFF ⇒ •

and press of from Alarm Notification window to activate TV and watch the booked program.

Set Priority at Recording Start Time When a TV & Music Group Function is Active

[Record Timer Setting Window] ⇒ 🖺 ⇒ Recording or Operation Preferred
 ¬
 Recording or Operation Preferred →

When **Recording** is set, the function in operation is interrupted/ended, and recording starts. When Operation **Preferred** is set, a confirmation asking to start recording appears.

Edit View/Record Timer Settings

[Booking Program List]/[Timer Recording List] ⇒ Select a booked program ⇒ 🖾 ⇒ Edit each item 🗢 🖾

Delete Booked Programs

[Booking Program List]/[Timer Recording List] ⇔ Select a program ⇔ **⑥** ⇔ *Delete* ⇔ **⑥**

- To Delete the Selected Program
 ⇒ Delete This ⇒ ⇒ YES ⇒ ●
- To Delete Multiple Programs
 ⇒ Delete Selected ⇒ ⇒ Select
 programs ⇒ ⇒ Repeat step of selecting
- programs ⇒ 🖾 ⇒ YES ⇒ •

 To Delete All
- ⇒ Delete All ⇒ ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ ● ⇒ YES ⇒ ●
- Select **Delete Past** to delete old bookings.

Check Volume of Recorded Programs

[Timer Recording List] \Rightarrow **(a)** \Rightarrow *Memory Info* \Rightarrow **(9)**

Check Result of Timer Recording

 $\bigcirc \Rightarrow \textit{TV} \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow \textit{Result Timer Rec} \Rightarrow \bigcirc$

⇒ Select an entry ⇒ •

Press ● to play the recorded program.

Music Player & S! Appli



| About Music Player | 9-2 |
|----------------------------|------|
| Playback Windows | 9-3 |
| Downloading Music | 9-4 |
| Transferring Music from PC | 9-4 |
| Music Playback | 9-5 |
| Playing Music | 9-5 |
| Using Playlists | 9-6 |
| S! Appli | 9-7 |
| About S! Appli | 9-7 |
| Downloading S! Appli | 9-7 |
| Activating S! Appli | 9-7 |
| Advanced Features | 9-9 |
| Music Player | 9-9 |
| S! Appli | 9-11 |

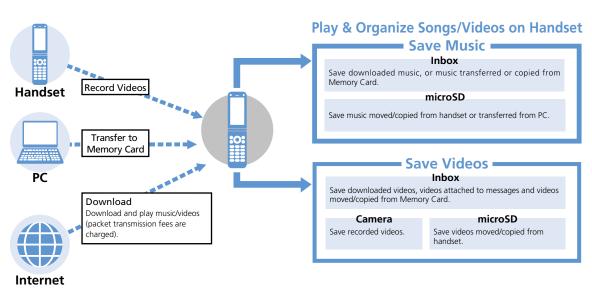


About Music Player

Use Music Player to play and organize songs on handset.

- Access the Internet to download music.
- Also play videos with Music Player.
- Some files are unplayable depending on their format.

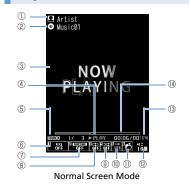
- Fully charge battery beforehand. Playback unavailable on low charge.
- Alarm notifications, incoming calls, etc. will pause playback. For videos, select the same video to resume watching.



About Music Player



Playback Windows



15:30 Unknown 101 107/01 15:30

Full Screen Mode (For Video Playback)

| 1 | Artist Name <creator>1</creator> |
|-----|--|
| (2) | Title |
| (3) | Playback Image <video>1</video> |
| (4) | Playback Status |
| 4) | ▶ PLIM Play ■ PILIM Play ■ |
| | ► Fast Forward ★ Rewind |
| | ▶¶L000 Slow Play ² ■ PLIM Fast Play ² |
| (5) | Current Track/Total Tracks in Folder (Current File Number/Total Files in Folder) |
| 6 | Equalizer The second of the s |
| 7 | Sound Effect WORD OFF WORD WORD WORD HE HE HE HE HE HE HE HE HE H |
| 8 | Repeat Mode ∰ OFF |

Repeat One³

- (a) Shuffle Mode
 (b) ON³ (b) OFF
 (c) To Web
 (c) Connect to the URL in the song.
 (d) Song/file Selection
 (e) Volume
 (f) Elapsed Playback Time/Total Playback
 (f) Time
 (f) Playback Position
 - Descriptions in < > apply to video playback.

indicates the current playback position.

Use to move playback position during

2 Available during video playback.

pause

3 Available during music playback.

About Music Player

Downloading Music

 Check the fees, expiration date, etc. on the download site.

- 2 Follow onscreen instructions

Transferring Music from PC

Save music from PC to memory card for playback.

- Music Player plays AAC-format music (file extension mp4 or 3gp). Use software to convert file format as needed.
- Connect handset to your PC with a USB cable

This enables memory card data to be accessed from your PC.

Copy music to memory card folder Copy to the following folder: \(\frac{1}{2}\) PRIVATE\(\frac{1}{2}\) MyFOLDER\(\frac{1}{2}\) My Items\(\frac{1}{2}\) Music

4 Remove USB cable from your PC and handset

Follow appropriate procedure for your PC's OS when removing cable.

Note

- See software providers' websites for specifications and usage of file format conversion software. SoftBank provides no guarantees regarding operation of any specific software.
- Music is for personal use only.
- Files created with PC software, etc. may not play.
- Do not infringe on third party/intellectual property rights.

Tip

 After saving music, return USB Mode Setting to Communication Mode.

Music Player & S! Appli တ



Playing Music



Song List

3 Select a song ⇒ ●



Music Playback Window (Video Playback Window)

Tip

- Alternatively, play music from Ring Songs
 Music in Data Folder.
- Alternatively, in Standby, press and hold husic to start Music Player. Play resumes from where it was paused last.
- If files were saved to memory card via another handset, those files may be saved to Sound&Ringtones. To play:

ⓐ \Rightarrow Music \Rightarrow ⓐ \Rightarrow microSD \Rightarrow ⓐ \Rightarrow Ring Songs \Rightarrow ⓐ \Rightarrow Select a folder \Rightarrow ⓐ \Rightarrow Specify music to play

- To play videos downloaded or recorded with camera:
 - ♠ Data Folder ➡ ♠ Specify a video to play

Playback Operations

While Handset is Open

| Pause/Play | • |
|---------------|----------------------------------|
| Adjust Volume | O or press and hold |
| | A ₇₇₋ Or \P_{Music} |

| Play from Beginning Play Previous Song or Video | ⊚ or press and hold ⊕ ₇₇ - |
|---|--|
| Play Next Song/Video | ⊙ or press and hold • Music |
| Rewind | Press and hold © |
| Fast Forward | Press and hold 🕞 |
| Move Playback Position | O during pause |
| Open/Close Menu | (2) |
| Select a Song/File | |
| Equalizer ¹ | 1 |
| Sound Effect ¹ | 2 |
| Repeat Mode ¹ | 3 |
| Shuffle Mode ¹ | 4 |
| Access the Internet | 5 |
| Toggle Normal Screen and Full Screen ² | 9 |
| End Playback | CLEAR |

- 1 Press key to toggle on/off.
- 2 Available when playing videos.

9



Music Playback

While Handset is Closed

| Adjust Volume | A _{₹7} - Or ▼ _{Music} |
|--|---|
| Playing from Beginning Play Previous Song or Video | Press and hold ⊕ _{₹7} - |
| Play Next Song/Video | Press and hold Imusic |

Using Playlists

Use playlists to play songs by genre or by artist, or gather your favorite songs and arrange them in your favorite order.

 Songs saved on memory card can also be added to playlists.

Creating a Playlist



Playlists Window

Repeat this step to add other songs.

4 When all songs are selected ⇒ 🖾 ⇒ Enter playlist name ⇒ •

Playing Songs from Playlist

1 [Playlists Window] ⇒ Select a playlist ⇒ ●

To play all songs in the playlist, press \boxtimes .



Playlist

Select a song ⇒ ●
Songs play back in the listed order.

Tip

• To play all songs, select *All Tracks (Phone)* in Playlists window and press (twice).

More Features

Advanced

Playing Music/Video

- Resume Playback
- Use Menu
- File Information
- Repeat
- Set Preferred Sound Effect
- Change Playback Window Appearance
- Set Image Display Size
- Change Video Playback Speed
- Use a Different Function While Playing Music
- Check Operation Methods

(P. 9-9)

Organizing Songs

- Set a Song as Ringtone
- Search for Songs
- Change Order of Songs
- Check Volume of Saved Music

(P. 9-10)

Playlists

- Add Songs to Playlist
- Change Order of Playlist Songs
- Cancel Playlist Songs
- Edit a Playlist Name
- Copy a Playlist
- Check Playlist Information
- Delete Playlists

(P. 9-10)



About S! Appli

S! Appli are applications designed for SoftBank handsets. Download games and other applications.

About Network S! Appli

Since network S! Appli require network (Internet) connection, transmission fees are incurred. A confirmation may appear when an application is connecting to the network. Follow onscreen instructions.

Tip

 For information on transmission fees, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P. 15-51).

About License Information

To check Java™ and JBlend™ license information:



Downloading S! Appli

Follow onscreen instructions.

Note

- Check the battery level before downloading S! Appli. If the battery level is low, download may fail.
- If you replace USIM Card due to damage or loss, downloaded S! Appli are no longer available.
- If you initialize handset when using an S! Appli moved to Memory Card, the S! Appli will no longer be usable.
 You will need to download it again.
- When using an S! Appli moved to Memory Card, using the procedures below will resave the S! Appli to your handset and the S! Appli in Memory Card will no longer be usable.
 - Download the same S! Appli with no
 Memory Card inserted
- Download the same S! Appli with different Memory Card inserted

Use an S! Appli resaved to handset as it is in handset, or again move it to Memory Card.

qiT

 See S! Appli's Help menu or the download site for operational information.

Activating S! Appli



S! Appli List

2 Select an application ⇒ **●**

Tip

- S! Appli is paused when a call arrives. When the call ends, a prompt appears. Select Resume to resume the S! Appli.







S! Appli

- Check S! Appli Information
- Check Volume of Saved S! Appli
- Delete an S! Appli

(P. 9-11)

Customize

When Running S! Appli

- Set Sound Volume
- Set Vibration
- Set Backlight
- Set Blinking of Backlight
- Allow/Prohibit S! Appli to Connect to Network
- Allow/Prohibit S! Appli to Write Personal Information
- Reset Security Settings of S! Appli

(P. 14-24)

S! Appli

- Reset S! Appli Settings
- Delete All S! Appli

(P. 14-24)

Advanced Features



Music Player

Start Here

| [Music Playback Window] | P. 9-5 |
|-------------------------|--------|
| [Video Playback Window] | P. 9-5 |
| [Song List] | P. 9-5 |
| [Playlists Window] | P. 9-6 |
| [Playlist] | P. 9-6 |

Playing Music/Video

Resume Playback

Music
 Resume Play
 Nesume Play
 Nes

Use Menu

[Music Playback Window]/[Video Playback Window] ⇒ 🖾 🖈 Select an item 🖈 •* *Press to toggle.

File Information

[Music Playback Window]/[Video Playback Window] ⇒ 🏚 ⇒ File Property or Video Info 🖈 🖲

Repeat

[Music Playback Window] ⇒ **(a)** ⇒ Action Setting ⇒ ● ⇒ Repeat Setting ⇒ ● ⇒ All Repeat or Single Repeat 🗢 💿

Set Preferred Sound Effect

[Music Playback Window]/[Video Playback Windowl ⇒ 🏚 ⇒ Action Setting ⇒ 💿 ⇒ Sound Effect ⇒ • SRS_WOW ⇒ • ⇒ Select user setting 1 to 3 ⇒ 🖾 🗢 Set level for each effect ⇒ ●

• To return sound effect to initial state ⇒ Select user setting 1 to 3 ⇒ 🖾 (twice) ⇒ •

Change Playback Window Appearance

[Music Playback Window] ⇒ **(a)** ⇒ Action Setting ⇒ ● ⇒ Change Skin ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a design 👄 💿

Set Image Display Size

[Video Playback Window] ⇒ (a) ⇒ Action Setting ⇒ ● ⇒ Set Image Disp. ⇒ ● ⇒ Normal or Fit in Display - •

Available when playing in Normal Screen mode.

Change Video Playback Speed

[Video Playback Window] ⇒ 🏚 ⇒ Play Menu ⇒ ● ⇒ Fast or Slow ⇒ ● Press

to return to normal speed.

Use a Different Function While Playing Music

[Music Playback Window] ⇒ 🗗 ⇒ Switch to BGM ⇒ • Activate another function In Standby, press and hold Music during BGM playback to end Music Player.

Check Operation Methods

[Video Playback Window] ⇒ 🏚 ⇒ Help ⇒ \odot



Organizing Songs

Set a Song as Ringtone

[Song List] ⇒ Select a song ⇒ **②** ⇒ Select Ring Tone ⇒ **③** ⇒ Select ringtone item ⇒ **③**

Search for Songs

[Song List], [Playlists Window] or [Playlist] $\Rightarrow \textcircled{0} \Rightarrow Search \Rightarrow \textcircled{0} \Rightarrow Title \Rightarrow \textcircled{0} \Rightarrow$ Enter condition $\Rightarrow \textcircled{0}$

Select a song from search results and press

to play it.

Change Order of Songs

[Song List]/[Playlist] \Rightarrow $\textcircled{a} \Rightarrow$ Sort \Rightarrow eSelect a criterion \Rightarrow e

Check Volume of Saved Music

[Song List] ⇒ 🏚 🖈 Memory Info 🖈 📵

Playlists

Add Songs to Playlist

Change Order of Playlist Songs

[Playlist] ⇒ Select a song ⇒ ⊕ ⇒ Edit

Playlist ⇒ ● ⇒ Sort Playlist ⇒ ● ⇒

Select a position ⇒ ●

Cancel Playlist Songs

 $[Playlist] \Rightarrow Select a song \Rightarrow \textcircled{o} \Rightarrow \textit{Edit}$ $Playlist \Rightarrow \textcircled{o} \Rightarrow \textit{Release Settings} \Rightarrow \textcircled{o}$

- To Release the Selected Song
 ⇒ Release This
 ⇒ ♥ → YES
- To Release Multiple Songs
 ⇒ Release Selected
 ⇒ Select songs
 ⇒ ⊕ ⇒ YES
 ⊕ ●
- To Release All
 ⇒ Release All
 ⇒ Enter Security Code

⇒ • YES ⇒ •

Edit a Playlist Name

[Playlists Window] ⇒ Select a playlist ⇒ **②** ⇒ *Edit Playlist Name* ⇒ **③** ⇒ Edit playlist name ⇒ **③**

Copy a Playlist

[Playlists Window] ⇒ Select a playlist ⇒ **(a)**⇒ Copy to Playlist ⇒ **(b)**

Check Playlist Information

[Playlists Window] ⇒ Select a playlist ⇒ **(a)**⇒ *Playlist Info* ⇒ **(b)**

Delete Playlists

[Playlists Window] ⇒ Select a playlist ⇒ **(a)**⇒ *Delete Playlist* ⇒ **(b)**

- To Delete the Selected Playlist
- → Delete This → → YES → ●

 To Delete Multiple Playlists
- ⇒ Delete Selected ⇒ ⇒ Select playlists
- \Rightarrow \bullet \Rightarrow \bowtie \Rightarrow YES \Rightarrow \bullet
- To Delete All
 - \Rightarrow Delete All \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow YES \Rightarrow \bigcirc



S! Appli

Start Here

[S! Appli List] P. 9-7

Check S! Appli Information

[S! Appli List] ⇒ Select an S! Appli ⇒ **(a)** ⇒ **Properties** ⇒ **(b)**

Check Volume of Saved S! Appli

[S! Appli List] ⇒ 🌀 🖈 Memory Info ⇒ 🕥

Delete an S! Appli

[S! Appli List] ⇒ Select an S! Appli ⇒ **②** ⇒ **Delete** ⇒ **③** ⇒ **YES** ⇒ **③**

Entertainment



| S! Quick News | 10-2 |
|----------------------------------|--------|
| Using S! Quick News (Japanese) | . 10-2 |
| S! Info Channel | 10-3 |
| Using S! Info Channel (Japanese) | . 10-3 |
| S! Contents Store | 10-5 |
| Downloading Contents (Japanese) | . 10-5 |
| Advanced Features | 10-6 |
| S! Quick News | . 10-6 |
| S! Info Channel | . 10-6 |
| Weather Indicators | . 10-6 |





Using S! Quick News (Japanese)

Registered news can be updated automatically and checked from Standby.

 Packet transmission fees are incurred for using S! Quick News.

Registering News

<Example> Register news on S! Quick News List

1 Press and hold 🛇



S! Quick News List

- 2 Add News ⇒ ⇒ YES ⇒ ●
- 3 Select an item ⇒ ●
 Follow onscreen instructions.

Checking Updated Information

- 1 [S! Quick News List] ⇒ Select an item ⇒ ●
- Select information ⇒ To check next updated information, press ⊗.



Advanced

S! Quick News

- Manually Update List
- View Descriptions of Registered News
- Delete Registered News/Items

(P. 10-6)



S! Quick News

- Set Automatic Updates for S! Quick News
- Hide S! Quick News in Standby
- Set Ticker Speed
- Set Information to Appear in S! Quick News
- Hide S! Quick News Images
- Reset S! Quick News Registered Contents

(P. 14-25)

Using S! Info Channel (Japanese)

This information service automatically receives the latest news, weather and other information

Packet transmission fees are incurred for using
 St. Info Channel/Weather Indicators

Subscribing for Service

Subscribe by registering to receive service.



S! Info Channel Menu

Register/Cancel ⇒ ● ⇒ YES ⇒

Follow onscreen instructions.

Checking Latest Information

A Desktop Icon notifies you when new information is received.

🚺 💍 ⇒ Desktop Icons 👫 🗢 🗨



•

Follow onscreen instructions

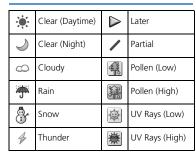
Tip

- To check from a menu:
 [S! Info Channel Menu] ⇒ What's New ⇒
- To check previous information:
 [S! Info Channel Menu] ⇒ History ⇒ ⇒
 Select a date ⇒ ⇒ Unread or read backnumbers are indicated with № 0 → №

Weather Indicators

After subscribing, weather indicators showing current weather appear in Standby.

Weather Indicators



- <Example> Cloudy, partial rain ∞ / **
- For a complete list of indicators, see Appendix (P. 15-19).

Checking Weather Report

1 [S! Info Channel Menu] ⇒ Weather Indicator ⇒ ● ⇒ Weather ⇒ ●







S! Info Channel

- Receive Previous Unreceivable Information
- Store Images/Melodies from Web Pages
- Add Phone Numbers/Mail Addresses from Web Pages

(P. 10-6)

Weather Indicators

• Manually Update Weather Information

(P. 10-6)





S! Info Channel

- Set Whether to Display Desktop Icon For New Received Information
- Set Font Size for Web Pages

(P. 14-25)

Weather Indicators

- Set Whether to Automatically Update Weather Information
- Set Whether to Display Weather Indicators in Standby
- Set Whether to Display Desktop Icon For New Received Information

(P. 14-26)



Downloading Contents (Japanese)

Download contents via Yahoo! Keitai.





2 S! Contents Store ⇒ ● Follow onscreen instructions.

S! Quick News

Start Here

Manually Update List

[S! Quick News List]

Select an item

→ YES ⇒ ●

View Descriptions of Registered News

[S! Ouick News List] > Select an item Outline ⇒ ●

Delete Registered News/Items

[S! Ouick News List] > Select an item

- To Delete the Selected Item Delete this \Rightarrow \bigcirc YES \Rightarrow \bigcirc
- To Delete All
- Delete all \Rightarrow \bigcirc YES \Rightarrow \bigcirc (twice) \Rightarrow Enter Security Code 🗢 🔘 (twice)

S! Info Channel

Start Here

[S! Info Channel Menu]P. 10-3 [Web Page]......P. 10-3

Receive Previous Unreceivable Information

[S! Info Channel Menu]

Get Latest Contents ⇒ ● YES ⇒ ●

Store Images/Melodies from Web Pages

[Web Page] ⇒ 🏚 🖈 Save File ⇒ 🏵 (⇒ Select a file ⇒ ●) ⇒ Save ⇒ ● ⇒ YES ⇒ (Select a folder ⇒ () (> YES or NO ⇒ (●)

Select Play and press
to play melody file. Select **Property** and press (to check file information

Add Phone Numbers/Mail Addresses from **Web Pages**

[Web Page] ⇒ 🌀 🖈 Add to Phone Book 🖈

- To Save to Handset
 - ⇒ Phone ⇒ Select store method ⇒ Book ⇒ (twice)) ⇒ Edit items ⇒ (□) (⇒ YES or NO ⇒ (•) (⇒ Enter entry number ⇒
- To Save to USIM Card ⇒ USIM ⇒ (•) ⇒ Select store method ⇒ Book ⇒ (twice)) ⇒ Edit items ⇒ (□) (⇒ YES ⇒ (●))

Weather Indicators

Start Here

[S! Info Channel Menu]...... P. 10-3

Manually Update Weather Information

[S! Info Channel Menu] > Weather YES ⇒ •

Tools



| Life History Viewer | 11-2 |
|-------------------------------------|--------|
| Life History Viewer Window | . 11-2 |
| Viewing Data in Chronological Order | . 11-2 |
| Schedule | |
| Schedule Window | . 11-4 |
| Saving Events to Schedule | . 11-4 |
| Checking Saved Events | |
| Deleting Events | . 11-6 |
| To Do List | 11-7 |
| Saving Tasks | . 11-7 |
| Checking Saved Tasks | . 11-7 |
| Deleting Tasks | . 11-8 |
| Text Memo | 11-9 |
| Saving Text Memos | . 11-9 |
| Deleting Text Memos | . 11-9 |
| Voice Memo 1 | 1-10 |
| Recording Your Voice | 11-10 |
| Calculator 1 | 1-11 |
| Using Calculator | 11-11 |
| Alarm 1 | 1-12 |
| Setting Alarm | 11-12 |
| Canceling Alarm | 11-13 |

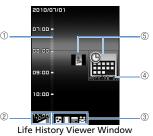
| Bar Code Reader | 11-14 |
|-------------------------------|-------|
| Scanning Bar Codes | 11-14 |
| Checking Scanned Data | 11-14 |
| Text Reader | 11-16 |
| Scanning Text | 11-17 |
| Checking Scanned Text | 11-17 |
| Advanced Features | 11-19 |
| Life History Viewer | 11-19 |
| Schedule | 11-19 |
| To Do List | 11-20 |
| Text Memo | 11-20 |
| Alarm | 11-21 |
| Bar Code Reader & Text Reader | 11-21 |



Life History Viewer

View activities in chronological order.

Life History Viewer Window





Time Axis ② Time Axis Zoom Zoom in or out to adjust time span. Select Axis unit between one-minute and onemonth. - '9' - Hide Data Type Still image, Image data Video Schedule Received Sent Received & sent messages (4) Data properties No Title: Image files and movie files Title: Schedule events Sender/Receiver Name: Messages

⑤ Icon

Thumbnail: Image files

■ Movie files

etc. Schedule events =, , , , sms etc. Messages

Date and time

Title

Title/Name: Image files, movie files and schedule events

Sender/Receiver Name: Messages

qiT

· Still images and images in JPEG format can be browsed

Viewing Data in Chronological Order

Viewer ⇒ •



Life History Viewer Window

To reduce/enlarge scale of time axis, press 🖾 or 🖘.



Life History Viewer Closeup Window



The function corresponding to the data type is activated and the data is opened.





Life History Viewer

- Hide Some Items in Life History Viewer
- Update Life History Viewer

(P. 11-19)

Schedule

Save future events to Schedule. Set alarm to be activated at a specified time with message and animation appearing to remind you of the event. Saved events can be checked from Schedule window.

Schedule Window



① Calendar

Blue date: Saturdays

Red date: Sundays, public and other

holidays Pink date: Anniversary

Date with gray background: Today

② Information Panel

Date, day of the week, content type icon, time and saved content

- Content Type Icon
- (or a user icon) Event
- Anniversary
- Anniversary
- Event Repetition Icon

 Alarm Notification
- Daily event
- W Weekly event
- M Weekly event
- A Event for over a day

Saving Events to Schedule



Event Edit Window

- 4 ∅ ⇔ © ⇒ Enter start/end date and time ⇒ ©

Folders are unavailable when *Clock Alarm Tone*, *Voice Announce* or *OFF* is selected.



Entered content appears when alarm sounds or vibrates

Alarm Notification

When the set time arrives, alarm sounds and animation appears (on Display or Sub-display) for approximately five minutes.

Press any key to stop alarm. Press any key again to end notification message.

Tip

- If the set alarm time arrives during a call, alarm tone sounds through earpiece.
- If a call arrives while alarm is sounding, alarm stops.

Adding Holidays & Anniversaries

- 1 [Schedule Window] ⇒ 🖾 ⇒

 Holiday or Anniversary ⇒ ●

- **5** 🖾

Setting Secret Entries

Set private events as secret entries.

- Activate Secret Mode or Secret Data Only Mode beforehand (P. 4-6).
- Events set as secret entries are viewable only in Secret Mode or Secret Data Only Mode (P. 4-6).
- [Event Edit Window] ⇒ Enter items ⇒

Tip

Checking Saved Events



Schedule Window

Press \mathfrak{D} to toggle between weekly and monthly view.

2 ♦ Select a date with events ⇒

•



Event List

Schedule

3 Select an event ⇒ ●



Event Details

Deleting Events

To Delete One Event

- In [Event List], select an event or [Event Details] ⇒ **⑥**
- Delete ⇒ ⇒ Delete This ⇒ ●
 ⇒ YES ⇒ ●

To Delete Multiple Events

- In [Schedule Window], select date, [Event List] or [Event Details] ⇒ ⑥
- 2 Delete ⇒ ⇒ Delete Selected ⇒ ●

To Delete All Events Prior to a Specified Date

- In [Schedule Window], select date, [Event List] or [Event Details] ⇒ **②**
- Delete
 Delete
 Delete Delete Past
 Delete

Advanced

Schedule

- Sort Events by Icon
- Save Image/Animation to User Icon List
- Cancel User Icons
- Check Number of Saved Events
- Edit an Event
- Copy an Event
- Delete All Events
- Reset Holidays
- Search Information by Keyword

(P. 11-19)

?? Customize

Alarm

- Set Priority at Alarm Notification Time
- Change Alarm Tone

(P. 14-2)



Save tasks to To Do List Set Alarm to remind vou of deadlines.

Saving Tasks

- 1 ⇒ Tools ⇒ ⇒ To Do List ⇒
- (a) ⇒ New ⇒ (•)
 - To Edit a Saved Task ⇒ Select a task ⇒ 🏚 🖈 Edit ⇒ 🌘



Task Edit Window

- Task appears when alarm time arrives.
- - To Enter Date Manually Enter Date ⇒ • Enter due date and time 🖈 🖲
 - To Enter Due Date from Calendar Choose Date ⇒ • Select a date on Calendar \Rightarrow • Enter date/time \Rightarrow \bigcirc

- To Cancel a Due Date No Date ⇒ •
- 5 P ⇒ ⊙ ⇒ Select a priority level \Rightarrow (\bullet
- notification option ⇒ ● (⇒ Enter time)
- 8 № ⇒ Select an alarm tone type ⇒ • (⇒ Select a folder ⇒ • ⇒ Select an alarm tone ⇒ •) ⇒

Folders are unavailable when Clock Alarm Tone. Voice Announce or OFF is selected

Alarm Notification

When the set time arrives, alarm sounds and animation appears (on Display or Sub-display) for approximately five minutes.

Press any key to stop alarm. Press any key again to end notification message.

Tip

- · If the set alarm time arrives during a call, alarm tone sounds through earpiece.
- If a call arrives while alarm is sounding, alarm stops.

Checking Saved Tasks



Task List

2 Select a task ⇒ ●



Task Details

Tip

 Overdue tasks are indicated by red status icons (e.g. Plan).

To Do List

Deleting Tasks

To Delete One Task

- In [Task List], select a task or [Task Details] ⇒ **⑥**
- Delete ⇒ ⇒ Delete This ⇒ ⇒ YES ⇒ ●

To Delete Multiple Tasks

- 1 [Task List] ⇒ 🏚
- Delete ⇒ ⇒ Delete Selected ⇒ ●
- Select a task ⇒ ●
 Repeat this step to specify other tasks.

To Delete All Completed Tasks

- 1 [Task List] ⇒ 🏚
- Delete ⇒ ⇒ Delete
 Completed ⇒ ⇒ YES ⇒ ●

More Features

Advanced

To Do List

- Sort Tasks by Category
- Change Order of Tasks
- Set Task Status
- Delete All Tasks

(P. 11-20)

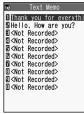
Customize

Alarm

- Set Priority at Alarm Notification Time
- Change Alarm Tone

(P. 14-2)

Saving Text Memos



Text Memo List

- 2 <Not Recorded> ⇒ 🖾 ⇒ Enter content ⇒ 🌘
 - To Edit a Saved Text Memo

 ⇒ Select a text memo ⇒ ⊜ ⇒ Edit content ⇒ ●

Deleting Text Memos

To Delete One Text Memo

- [Text Memo List] ⇒ Select a text memo ⇒ (a)
- Delete ⇒ ⇒ Delete This ⇒ ⇒ YES ⇒ ●

To Delete Multiple Text Memos

- 1 [Text Memo List] ⇒ 🎃

More Features

Advanced

Text Memo

- Save a Text Memo to Schedule
- Sort Text Memos by Category
- Check Text Memo Information
- Delete All Text Memos

(P. 11-20)

Voice Memo

Record voice for up to 20 seconds. Handset makes single recording and overwrites each time.

• See P. 3-5 and P. 3-18 for playing and deleting a recorded voice memo.

Recording Your Voice

- \Rightarrow \bigcirc
- **2 YES** ⇒ **•** Record your voice Speak into microphone after short beep sounds through earpiece. When remaining recording time reaches five seconds, a short beep sounds. When recording is finished, two short beeps sound. To stop recording, press .

Tip

- · Recording stops automatically when a call arrives, alarm goes off or another function is activated.
- See P. 3-4 for details on recording the other party's voice.

Using Calculator

- 2 Enter numbers with Keypad ⇒ Enter +, -, × or ÷ with Multi Selector
 - To Calculate Negative Numbers

 ⇒ ⑥ ⇒ Enter numbers with keypad ⇒
 Enter + , , × or ÷ with Multi Selector
- Result appears.

Operations

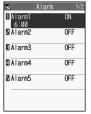
| Enter Number | 0 - 9 |
|--------------------|------------|
| + (Add) | ③ |
| - (Subtract) | © |
| × (Multiply) | \odot |
| ÷ (Divide) | © |
| = (Equal) | • |
| Decimal Point | |
| Cancel Calculation | CLEAR (AC) |
| Clear Number | CLEAR (C) |

Tip

If the calculation result exceeds 10 digits, .E appears.

Setting Alarm





Alarm List

2 Select an alarm ⇒ 🖾



Alarm Setting Window

- 4 🕖 ⇒ 🏵 🗢 Enter time ⇒ 🏵

- 7 ∰ ⇒ ⇒ ۞ to adjust volume ⇒

 •
- - To Set Snooze
 ON ⇒ ⊕ ⇒ Enter number of activation times ⇒ Enter time interval
- 9 M ⇒ ⇒ ON or OFF ⇒ ⇒ 🖾

■ To View Alarm Entries

Select an entry ⇒ ●



Alarm Details

Alarm Operations

When the set time arrives, alarm activates and animation appears (on Display or Sub-display). When Auto Power is set to ON (Alarm Setting window), handset automatically turns on for alarm.

Press any key to stop alarm tone with handset open.

When Snooze is set to *OFF*, press any key again to cancel alarm and return to previous window. When Snooze is set to *ON*, alarm tone repeats at the set interval. Press to cancel Snooze.

Note

- When Keypad Sound is set to ON, two short beeps sound if you:
- Press a key, after canceling alarm (Snooze not set).
- Press 🖚 while snooze is still set.
- Set the auto power-on function to OFF in Alarm Setting window and turn off handset, when you are near high-precision electronic devices or devices using weak signals, on an aircraft or in a hospital where handset use is prohibited.
- If a call arrives while alarm is sounding, alarm stops.
- If the alarm activation time comes during a call, alarm sounds from Earpiece. Snooze does not work even if it is set to ON.

More Features



Alarm

- Cancel All Alarms
- Edit Alarm Settings

(P. 11-21)



Alarm

- Set Priority at Alarm Notification Time
- Change Alarm Tone

(P. 14-2)

Canceling Alarm





Each time you press (9), alarm toggles between ON and OFF.

Tip

 Alarm settings are retained even if alarm is canceled.

Bar Code Reader

About JAN & QR Codes

Scan JAN and QR codes with Bar Code Reader.

JAN Code

JAN codes are linear (1-dimensional) barcodes consisting of parallel bars of varying width. Scan JAN8 (8-digit) and JAN13 (13-digit) codes.

QR Code

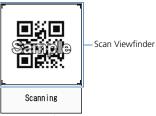
QR codes are matrix (2-dimensional) barcodes which can store information including kanji, kana and pictographs. Some data may require multiple QR codes to store the complete data (split data).

Scanning Bar Codes

 Position handset camera at a distance of 10 cm from the bar code.



2 Frame barcode in Scan Viewfinder



Scan Window

Scanning starts automatically. Use Θ to zoom in/out.

■ To Cancel

 \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc

■ To Scan Split Data

⇒ OK ⇒ ● (twice) ⇒ Scan a QR code Repeat to scan another QR code. Scan all split data to access and save information on handset.

- 3 Check scanned data
 - To Discard Scanned Data

 □ CLEAR □ YES □ ●

Tip

- Make sure to zoom in and focus JAN/QR code in Scan Viewfinder.
- · Scanning may take a while.
- · Some bar codes may not be scanned.

Checking Scanned Data

1 [Scan Window] ⇒ **②** ⇒ Reading Data List ⇒ **③**



Saved Scan Results List

2 Select an entry ⇒ ●



Scanned Information

Tip

 Characters that are not supported by Bar Code Reader are replaced with spaces (blanks).

More Features

Advanced

Using Scanned Data

- Make a Call
- Compose S! Mail
- Access the Internet
- Save to Phone Book
- Save a Bookmark
- Copy Text
- Edit Title of Scanned Data
- Delete Scanned Data

(P. 11-21)

Scan Modes

| Card read | Scan name, phone number, e-mail address, postal code, address and memo printed on business cards, and save all scanned data collectively as a Phone Book entry. |
|--------------------|--|
| Compose message | Scan address, subject or message text, and open Composition (S! Mail) window with the address, subject or message text entered. |
| URL | Scan URL, and access the page or save the URL to Bookmark. |
| Mail address | Scan e-mail address, and compose an S! Mail to the address. |
| Phone number | Scan phone number, and make a call to the number. |
| Free memo | Scan Japanese or English text, and save the text to Text Memo. |

Scan Window



| 1 | Scan Viewfinder |
|-----|---|
| @ | Category Icons ② Name ③ Phone number ☑ E-mail address ⑤ Postal code ④ Address ⑤ Memo 10 Address ⑤ Subject ⑤ Message text |
| 3 | Scanned Text |
| 4 | Scan Mode |
| (5) | Remaining Number of Characters That Can be Scanned |
| 6 | Negative Mode Nega appears when NEGA/POSI Mode is set to Negative Fix. |
| 7 | Key Guidance |

10015

Scanning Text

 Position handset camera at a distance of 10 cm from the text

<Example> Scanning in Card Read mode

- 2 New ⇒ ⇒ Card Read ⇒ ●



Scan Window

- 4 •

The scanned text appears.

- To Rescan the Same Text

 ⇒ CLEAR ⇒ YES ⇒ ●
- When Text Extends Beyond View

 ⇒ ۞ to scroll the field

■ To Scan Following Text

⇒ ● ⇒ Frame text in the Scan
Viewfinder (include several scanned
characters of the preceding text) ⇒ ●

■ To Scan Another Item

⇒ ● ⇒ Select a category icon ⇒ Frame text in the Scan Viewfinder ⇒ ●



Tip

- Make sure to zoom in and focus text in Scan Viewfinder.
- When *Processing* ... appears, do not move handset.
- · Handwritten text is not recognized.
- Text may not be recognized correctly when:
 - Faxed or copied text is scanned.
- Decorated characters are scanned.
- Spaces between characters are uneven.
- Text is indistinguishable from the background.
- Ambient lighting is inappropriate.

Checking Scanned Text



2 Select an entry ⇒ **●**



Scanned Text Details

Text Reader

More Features



Scanning Text

- Correct Scanned Text
- Edit Scanned Text
- Set Printing Status of Text
- Set Guidance ON/OFF
- Set Vertical/Lateral Scan

Using Scanned Data

- Make a Call
- Compose S! Mail
- Access the Internet
- Save to Phone Book
- Save a Bookmark
- Search Phone Book
- Save a Text Memo
- Copy Text
- Delete Scanned Data

(P. 11-21)

(P. 11-21)

Life History Viewer

Start Here

| [Life History Viewer Window]P. | 11-2 |
|--------------------------------------|------|
| [Life History Viewer Closeup Window] | |
| P. | 11-3 |

Hide Some Items in Life History Viewer

[Life History Viewer Window]/[Life History Viewer Closeup Windowl ⇒ 🏚 🖈 Display Setting ⇒ • Select a data item ⇒ • ⇒ Select an item ⇒ • □ Only checked items appear in Life History Viewer window.

Update Life History Viewer

[Life History Viewer Window]/[Life History Viewer Closeup Window] ⇒ 🏚 ⇒ Reload \Rightarrow (\bullet)

Schedule

Start Here

| [Schedule Window] | P. 11-4 |
|---------------------|---------|
| [Event Edit Window] | P. 11-4 |
| [Event List] | P. 11-5 |
| [Event Details] | P. 11-6 |

Sort Events by Icon

[Schedule Window], [Event List] or [Event Select an icon 🖈 🖲

Save Image/Animation to User Icon List

[Schedule Window], [Event List] or [Event Details] ⇒ 🏚 ⇒ User Icon setting ⇒ 🌑 ⇒ Select item ⇒ • Select folder ⇒ • ⇒ Select item ⇒ •

User Icons are available when saving events to Schedule. The selected image/animation appears in alarm notification.

Cancel User Icons

[Schedule Window], [Event List] or [Event Details] ⇒ **(a)** ⇒ User Icon setting ⇒ **(9)** ⇒ Select item ⇒ • Release this ⇒ • (⇒ YES ⇒ •)

Select Release All to cancel all icons.

Check Number of Saved Events

[Schedule Window] ⇒ 🖎 → No. of

Edit an Event

[Event List]/[Event Details] (⇒ Select an event) $\Rightarrow \boxtimes \Rightarrow$ Edit each item $\Rightarrow \boxtimes$

Copy an Event

[Event List]/[Event Details] ⇒ 🎃 ⇒ Copy ⇒ • Enter start/end date and time ⇒ Repetition setting of an event is canceled when it is copied.

Delete All Events

[Schedule Window], [Event List] or [Event Details] ⇒ **(a)** ⇒ **Delete** ⇒ **(9)** ⇒ **Delete** All ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ ● ⇒ Select an item ⇒ ● **YES** ⇒ ●

Reset Holidays

[Schedule Window] ⇒ (a) ⇒ Reset Holiday $\Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow YES \Rightarrow \bigcirc$

Search Information by Keyword

⇒ Quote Keyword ⇒ ⊙ ⇒ Schedule or Summary ⇒ ⊙ ⇒ Move cursor to head of keyword to search ⇒ ⊙ ⇒ Move cursor to last character of keyword to search ⇒ ⊙ ⇒ Select item from results ⇒ ⊙

To Select a Keyword from Previous Searches
 ⇒ History
 ⇒ Select keyword
 ⇒ My Search
 ⇒ Select item from results

(•)

To Do List

Start Here

[Task List]......P. 11-7 [Task Details]......P. 11-7

Sort Tasks by Category

Change Order of Tasks

Set Task Status

- The set status is indicated by the status icon in Task List and in Task Details.
- When **Completion** is set as status, enter the completion date.

Delete All Tasks

[Task List] \Rightarrow **③** \Rightarrow **Delete** \Rightarrow **③** \Rightarrow **Delete** All \Rightarrow **③** \Rightarrow Enter Security Code \Rightarrow **③** \Rightarrow YES \Rightarrow **④**

Text Memo

Start Here

Save a Text Memo to Schedule

[Text Memo List] ⇒ Select a text memo ⇒ **②** ⇒ *Edit Schedule* ⇒ **③** ⇒ Enter each item ⇒ **⑤**

Sort Text Memos by Category

[Text Memo List]

Select a text memo

Oheropoologie

Select a category

Select a category

Select a category

Select a category

Check Text Memo Information

[Text Memo List] ⇒ Select a text memo ⇒

• → Text Memo Info ⇒
•

Delete All Text Memos

[Text Memo List] \Rightarrow **@** \Rightarrow **Delete** \Rightarrow **@** \Rightarrow **Delete** \Rightarrow **O** \Rightarrow **Delete** \Rightarrow **O** \Rightarrow **Delete** \Rightarrow **O** \Rightarrow **O**

Alarm

Start Here

| | [Alarm | List] | | P. | 11-12 |
|---|--------|----------------|---|----|-------|
| Ì | [Alarm | Details |] | P. | 11-12 |

Cancel All Alarms

[Alarm List]/[Alarm Details] ⇔ **③** ⇔ *Release All* ⇔ **⑤** ⇔ *YES* ⇔ **⑥**

Edit Alarm Settings

[Alarm List]/[Alarm Details](⇒ Select an alarm) ⇒ 🖾 ⇒ Edit each item ⇒ 🖾

Bar Code Reader & Text Reader

Start Here

| [Saved Scan Results List] | P. 11-14 |
|---------------------------|----------|
| [Scanned Information] | P. 11-14 |
| [Scan Window] | P. 11-17 |
| [Scanned Text List] | P. 11-17 |
| [Scanned Text Details] | P. 11-17 |

Scanning Text

Correct Scanned Text

[Scan Window] ⇒ Scan text ⇒ ⊛ to move cursor to the character you want to correct ⇒ Press the number key corresponding to the correct character on the suggestion list ¬ Press ★ to toggle upper case and lower case.

Edit Scanned Text

 $[\text{Scan Window}] \Rightarrow \text{Scan text} \Rightarrow \textcircled{\textbf{6}} \Rightarrow \textit{Edit} \\ \Rightarrow \textcircled{\textbf{6}} \Rightarrow \text{Edit text using keypad}$

To cancel editing and return to scanned text, press ⑥, select *Select Recog. Data* and then press ⑥.

Set Printing Status of Text

- Set to *Positive Fix* when dark-colored text is printed on a light-colored background.
- Set to **Negative Fix** when light-colored text is printed on a dark-colored background.

Set Guidance ON/OFF

[Scan Window] ⇒ **(a)** ⇔ **Guidance OFF** or **Guidance ON** ⇒ **(9)**

Set Vertical/Lateral Scan

[Scan Window] ⇒ **(a)** ⇔ **Vertical Writing** or **Lateral Writing** ⇒ **(b)**

Using Scanned Data

Make a Call

[Scanned Information]/[Scanned Text
Details] ⇒ Select a phone number ⇒ ⑩ ⇔

Dialing ⇒ ⑩ ⇒ Voice Phone or Video Call

⇒ ⑩ ⇒ Dial ⇒ ⑩ ⇒ Talk ⇒ ☐ to end call



Compose S! Mail

Access the Internet

[Scanned Information]/[Scanned Text Details] \Rightarrow Select a URL \Rightarrow $\textcircled{o} \Rightarrow$ Internet \Rightarrow $\textcircled{o} \Rightarrow$ YES \Rightarrow o

Save to Phone Book

[Scanned Information]/[Scanned Text Details] ⇒ Select an item ⇒ **②** ⇒ *Add to Phone Book* ⇒ **③**

- To Save to Handset
- ➡ Phone
 ➡ Select store method

 ♠ (➡ Search Phone Book
 ➡ Select an entry

 ➡ ♠ (twice))
 ➡ Edit each item
 ➡ ♠ (➡)

 YES or NO
 ➡ ♠)
 ♠)
- To Save to USIM Card
- ⇒ USIM ⇒ ⇒ Select store method ⇒
 (⇒ Search Phone Book ⇒ Select an entry
 ⇒ (twice)) ⇒ Edit each item ⇒ ⑤ (⇒

 Overwrite or Add ⇒ ●) (⇒ YES ⇒ ●)

Save a Bookmark

[Scanned Information]/[Scanned Text Details] \Rightarrow Select a URL \Rightarrow $\textcircled{o} \Rightarrow$ Add Bookmark \Rightarrow o (twice) \Rightarrow Select a folder \Rightarrow o

Search Phone Book

[Scanned Text Details] ⇒ Select an item ⇒

③ ⇒ Search Phone Book ⇒ ⊙ ⇒ Search
Phone Book

Save a Text Memo

[Scanned Text Details] ⇒ Select an item ⇒ **a** ⇒ Add to Memo ⇒ **a**

Copy Text

[Scanned Information]/[Scanned Text Details] \Rightarrow o \Rightarrow Copy \Rightarrow o \Rightarrow Select beginning of characters \Rightarrow o \Rightarrow Select end of characters \Rightarrow o

Edit Title of Scanned Data

[Saved Scan Results List] \Rightarrow Select an entry \Rightarrow $\textcircled{o} \Rightarrow$ *Edit Title* \Rightarrow $\textcircled{o} \Rightarrow$ Edit title \Rightarrow o

Delete Scanned Data

[Saved Scan Results List]/[Scanned Text List]

⇒ Select an entry ⇒ ♠

- To Delete the Selected Entry
 - \Rightarrow Delete This \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow YES \Rightarrow \bigcirc
- To Delete All
 - ⇒ *Delete All* ⇒ ⊙ ⇒ Enter Security Code
 - \Rightarrow \bullet \Rightarrow YES \Rightarrow \bullet

Data Management



| About Data Folder | 12-2 |
|--------------------------------------|-------|
| Accessing Files | 12-3 |
| Opening Files | 12-3 |
| Creating Animations | 12-4 |
| Using Playlist (Melodies) | 12-5 |
| Using Playlists (Videos) | 12-5 |
| Editing Files | 12-7 |
| Editing Still Images | |
| Editing Videos | 12-8 |
| File & Folder Management | 12-9 |
| Creating a Folder | |
| Moving Files to a Different Folder | 12-9 |
| About Memory Card | 12-10 |
| Inserting & Removing a Memory Card | |
| Managing Memory Cards | 12-11 |
| Formatting a Memory Card | 12-11 |
| Accessing Memory Card Data | 12-11 |
| Copying Data between Handset & | |
| Memory Card | 12-12 |
| Configuring Print Settings of Images | 12-13 |
| | |

| Advanced Features | 12-14 |
|-------------------|-------|
| Accessing Files | 12-14 |
| Editing Files | 12-15 |
| Managing Folders | 12-15 |
| Managing Files | 12-16 |
| Memory Card | 12-16 |



About Data Folder

Use Data Folder to manage data on handset. Files are automatically saved to folders by file format.

• Some folders contain links. Use the links to access download sites in Yahoo! Keitai.

| Folders & Files in Data Folder | | | |
|--|---|--|--|
| My Picture | Melody | S! Appli | |
| Image files (Camera images and downloaded files such as My Pictograms) | Melodies and audio files recorded by Voice Announce | Downloaded S! Appli | |
| Ring Songs·Music | Videos | TV | |
| Chaku-Uta®, Chaku-Uta Full® and downloaded music files | Video files (captured/downloaded video files) | Recorded programs ¹ and captured screenshots ² | |
| 1 Save to memory card only. 2 Save to handset only. | | | |

When Data Folder memory is full or number of files savable is reached, a message asks whether to delete unnecessary data (note, however, this message may not appear depending on the data type). Follow the steps below to delete data:

 $YES \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow Select a folder \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow Select a data item \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow \Rightarrow YES \Rightarrow \bigcirc$

- You may need to select a data type before selecting a folder if the data you want to delete has multiple storage areas.
- You may need to select more than one data item to delete depending on the degree of insufficient memory.

Accessing Files

Opening Files on Memory Card



Videos ⇒ •

Select a folder ⇒ ●

Opening Files



File List

Select a file ⇒ •



Opened File Window

Tip

- Select files in S! Appli to activate S! Appli. For information about S! Appli, see P. 9-7.
- · Select files in Ring Songs-Music or Videos to activate Music Player. For details, see P. 9-3.

● ⇒ Data Folder ⇒ ●

- Select a folder ⇒ ⇒ microSD \Rightarrow \bigcirc
- Select a folder ⇒ •
- Select a file ⇒ ●

Indicators in File List

Indicators show file type and available operation.

OVGA movie

VGA movie

Attach to mail

Insert in Graphic Mail Set as wallpaper, etc.

Set as a ringtone

Infrared transmission

Copy/move to memory card

Fdit

Over 10 MB (Applies to Memory Card files)

Picture Window **Operations in Picture Window**

Using Picture Files

| Switch Files | ② |
|--|--|
| Toggle Normal Screen and Full Screen | • In full screen mode, view vertical images in Portrait View; horizontal images in Landscape View. |
| Zoom In/Zoom Out* | |
| Show at Actual Size* | |
| Scroll Large-sized or Zoomed-in Image* | ⊗ |

^{*} Press • to return to the original size.



Playing/Using Melody Files

Open a file from Melody folder.



Melody Window

Playback Operations

| Switch Files | ⊗ |
|---------------|----------------------------|
| Adjust Volume | © |
| | A ₇₇ - Or Music |
| Stop | • |
| End | CLEAR |

Creating Animations

Create animations each of which is made of up to 20 frames using still images in My Picture folder.



Original Animation List

- 2 <New> ⇒ ●

Repeat this step to assign a series of images to their respective frames.

- To Cancel an Assigned Image
 - ⇒ Select a frame ⇒ ⇒ Release This ⇒ ●

4 🖾

Note

- Only images in JPEG format can be used for creating animations.
- Some images may be unavailable depending on the image size or file size.
- · Images saved on memory card cannot be used.

Tip

Using Playlist (Melodies)

Save melodies to Playlist to play back in the saved order

- Melody ⇒ • Playlist
- **ⓑ ⇔** Edit Playlist **⇒ ◉**
 - To Clear Playlist

⇒ (a) ⇒ Release Playlist ⇒ (•) ⇒ YES \Rightarrow \bigcirc

Select a number ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a folder ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a melody ⇒

Repeat this step to assign other melodies to different numbers

- To Cancel an Assigned Melody ⇒ Select a number ⇒ ● ⇒ Release This 🖈 📵

Tip

- Select Playlist folder in Melody and press to play Playlist.
- · Changing file names of melodies on Playlist, or deleting melody files clears Playlist.

Using Playlists (Videos)

Save videos to a playlist to play them in the playlist order.

Videos ⇒ ● ⇒ Plavlist ⇒ ●



Playlists Window

- 2 Select a playlist ⇒ 🏚 ⇒ Edit Plavlist ⇒ ●
- 3 Select a number ⇒ ⇒ Select a folder ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a video ⇒ ● Repeat this step to assign other videos to different numbers.
 - To Cancel an Assigned Video ⇒ Select a number ⇒ ● ⇒ Release This ⇒ ● ⇒ YES ⇒ ●

qiT

 Select a playlist from a playlist folder and press to play.



More Features



Opening Files

- Check File Information
- Change Order of Files
- Set an Image to Appear in Standby
- Set a Video to Appear in Standby
- Set a Melody/Video as Ringtone

(P. 12-14)

Viewing Images

- Play Animation from the Beginning
- Compose Four Images to Make One
- Set Display Size of an Image
- Edit Title of an Original Animation
- Cancel an Original Animation

(P. 12-14)

Playing Melodies

• Play All Melodies in the Same Folder Repeatedly

(P. 12-15)

Playing Videos

- Switch Display Format of File List
- Clear a Playlist

(P. 12-15)



Customize

Display Settings

Set Image List View

(P. 14-5)

Editing Still Images

Basic Flow of Operations



Picture Window

- 3 to end editing

Note

- Only images with in File List can be edited.
- Repeated editing may cause deterioration of image quality or increased file size.
- For images larger than VGA, some edit options are unavailable. File size is automatically reduced to VGA or smaller when saved.

Adding a Frame

- 1 [Picture Window] ⇒ **②** ⇒ *Edit Image* ⇒ **③** ⇒ *Frame* ⇒ **③**
- 2 Select a frame ⇒
 - To Change Frame ⇔ ⊙
 - To Rotate Frame 180 Degrees

 ⇔ ©
 - To Cancel Frame

 ⇒ Cancel ⇒ •
- 3 •

Adding Stamps

- 1 [Picture Window] ⇔ ⑥ ⇔ Edit
 Image ⇔ ⑥ ⇔ Marker Stamp ⇔
 ⑥
- 2 Select a marker stamp 🖈 💿
 - To Rotate Marker Stamp

 ⇒ ⑤ ⇒ 90° to Right, 90° to Left or
 180° ⇔ ⑥
 - To Enlarge/Reduce Marker Stamp

 ⇒ ③ ⇒ Scale Up or Scale Down ⇒ ●
 - To Cancel Marker Stamp

 ⇒ 🖾
- B ♦ Select a position ⇒ ●
- To Paste Another Marker Stamp

 ⇒ 🖾 ⇒ Select a marker stamp ⇒ •
- 4 •
- **5 ● ⇒ YES** or **NO ⇒**

Pasting a Text Stamp

- 2 Enter text ⇒ ●

Editing Files

■ To Edit Text

 \Rightarrow **(a)** \Rightarrow **Character Input** \Rightarrow **(b)** \Rightarrow Enter text \Rightarrow **(c)**

■ To Change Text Color

 \Rightarrow **(a)** \Rightarrow **Character Color** \Rightarrow **(9)** \Rightarrow Select a color \Rightarrow **(9)**

Press (a) to toggle color palettes.

■ To Change Font Size

 \Rightarrow **(a)** \Rightarrow **Font Size** \Rightarrow **(b)** \Rightarrow Select a font size \Rightarrow **(c)**

3 ♦ ⇒ Select a position ⇒ ●

4 •

Cropping an Image

1 [Picture Window] ⇒ **②** ⇒ *Edit Image* ⇒ **③** ⇒ *Trim away* ⇒ **⑤**

Select a size ⇒ ● ⇒ ♦ to select an area ⇒ ●

3 0

Editing Videos

Edit and keep only the needed portion of a video clip.

Specify portion to save.

➤ To Start from Beginning of Clip

• to specify end point and select . The specified portion plays.

If **500KB** is selected, playback stops when 500KB is reached

3 (twice) ⇒ **YES** ⇒ **(**

Note

 Available only for QCIF (176 x 144) or smaller format clips (indicated by in File List). More Features

Advanced

Editing Files

- Retouch an ImageAdjust Image Brightness
- Rotate an Image
- Change Image Size
- Correct Backlight
- Refresh Skin Tone

(P. 12-15)

Creating a Folder

- ⇒ Data Folder ⇒ ⇒ Select a folder type ⇒ ●
 - <Example>When My Picture is Selected



Folder List

(a) ⇒ *Add Folder* ⇒ **(9)** ⇒ Enter folder name ⇒ •

Tip

· Folders can only be created in handset Data Folder.

Moving Files to a **Different Folder**

- [File List] ⇒ Select a file ⇒ ♠ ⇒ Move ⇒ •
 - To Move Selected File Move This ⇒ • Select a destination folder ⇒ • YES ⇒ •
 - To Move Multiple Files Move Selected ⇒ ● Select a destination folder ⇒ ● Select a file \Rightarrow (repeat to select another file) ⇒ 🖾 🖈 YES 🖈 💿
 - To Move All Files in a Folder Move All ⇒ • Select a destination folder ⇒ • YES ⇒ •



Advanced

Managing Folders

- Edit a Folder Name
- Delete a Folder
- Delete All Files in My Picture, Melody or Video Folder

(P. 12-15)

Managing Files

- Edit a Title in My Picture File List
- Check Volume of Saved Files
- Edit a File Name
- Delete Files

(P. 12-16)



About Memory Card

Save files to memory cards. Still images and videos shot with handset camera can be saved directly to memory card. Data can be copied and moved between handset and memory card. Data on memory card can also be accessed from Data Folder.

- Handset supports memory cards of up to 2 GB.
- Do not insert or remove memory cards when handset power is on.
- Insert memory cards properly. Otherwise, they cannot be used on handset.
- Do not affix stickers or labels to memory cards.
 As memory cards are very thin and precise mechanisms, even a thin sticker or label on a memory card may cause contact failure or destruction of data.
- Keep memory cards out of reach of infants who may accidentally swallow them or be injured.
- Do not remove a memory card or power off handset while writing and reading data with that memory card. It may cause data loss or malfunction.
- Access to memory cards may be unavailable when the battery level is low.

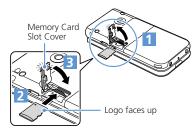
Inserting & Removing a Memory Card

Turn handset power off before inserting or removing a memory card.

Insertion

- 1 Open Slot Cover
- 2 Insert memory card into Memory Card Slot until it locks

Insert gently with the printed logo facing up.



3 Close Slot Cover

Tip

 If appears in Display, there may be a contact failure. Remove and reinsert memory card.

Removal

1 Press and release
Gently pull out memory card.



Note

- · Memory card may spring out.
- Memory card may break if inserted or removed with force.

-

Managing Memory Cards



Formatting a Memory Card

- Format memory cards on handset only.
 Memory cards formatted on another device or PC may not work.
- Formatting a memory card deletes all the data on it.

Note

- Do not remove memory card while formatting. Handset/memory card malfunction may occur.
- Make sure that there is no important data left on the memory card before formatting it.

Accessing Memory Card Data



microSD Manager Window

2 Select a category ⇒ ●



File List

3 Select a file ⇒ ●



Data List

4 Select a data item ⇒ ●



Data Details



Managing Memory Cards

Copying Data between Handset & Memory Card

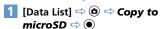
Following items can be copied to/from handset and memory card:

| PIM Data | Phone Book entries, Schedule, To Do List, text memos, Inbox, Outbox, Draft, bookmarks, content keys |
|-------------------------|---|
| Files in Data Folder | Still images, My Pictograms, Flash [®] , melodies, videos, songs |

Copying Handset Data to **Memory Card**

Copy Phone Book entries, Schedule, messages, images, videos, etc.

<Example> Copy data in Data Folder to memory card



To Copy Selected Data **Copy This** ⇒ (Select destination folder 🗢 🔍

To Copy Multiple Data Copy Selected ⇒ (Select copy destination folder ⇒ (●) ⇒ Select a data item \Rightarrow • (repeat to select another data) ⇒ 🖾 ⇒ YES ⇒ 💿

To Copy All Data **Copy All** ⇒ **(•)** Enter Security Code ⇒ (Select copy destination folder \Rightarrow \bigcirc) \Rightarrow YES \Rightarrow \bigcirc

aiT

- When one Phone Book entry or Schedule event that is set as secret is copied to memory card, its secret setting is canceled.
- · Files attached to messages may be deleted.
- You need to select a destination folder when copying data in My Picture folder.
- · Data saved in Pre-installed folders of Data Folder cannot be copied.
- · Content keys are copied collectively at one time.

Copying Memory Card Data to Handset

To Copy Images or Other Data to Handset

- a folder type ⇒ ● ⇒ microSD ⇒ ● Select a folder and sub-folder ⇒ • Select a data item ⇒ • ⇒ Copy to Phone ⇒ •
 - To Copy Selected Data Copy This ⇒ ●
 - To Copy Multiple Data Copy Selected ⇒ ● Select a data item \Rightarrow • (repeat to select another data) ⇒ 🖾 ⇒ YES ⇒ 💿
 - To Copy All Data **Copy All** ⇒ • Enter Security Code ⇒ • YES ⇒ •

Managing Memory Cards



- ⇒ Tools ⇒ ⇒ microSD Manager ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a PIM data type ⇒ • Select a data item ⇒ 🌣 Copy/OW to Phone \Rightarrow (\bullet)
 - To Copy Selected Files Copy & OW this ⇒ ●
 - To Copy Multiple Files Copy & OW select ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a file ⇒ ● (repeat to select another file) ⇒ 🖾
 - To Copy All Files Copy/OW All to Ph ⇒ •
- 2 Enter Security Code ⇒ ⇒ YES ⇒ • YES ⇒ • (⇒ YES or NO **⇒**(**●**))

Note

- · When copying memory card data to handset in overwrite mode, the corresponding data on handset is overwritten by the copied data.
- If the maximum storable number of items is reached when copying all items, copying stops at that point.

Configuring Print Settings of Images

Specify which images on memory card to be printed and the number of prints, etc. in DPOF (Digital Print Order Format) settings so that the images can be printed by DPOF compatible printers or print service shops.

- Picture ⇒ ● ⇒ microSD ⇒ ● ⇒ DCIM ⇒ ●
- Select a folder ⇒ ⇒ Select a still image ⇒ 🌣 DPOF Setting \Rightarrow
 - To Specify Selected Images DPOF set One 🖈 🖲
 - To Specify Multiple Images **DPOF set Choice** ⇒ ● Select a still image 🗢 🖲 (repeat to select another image) 🖈 🖾
- ⇒ Enter number of prints ⇒ •
- a Date \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow ON or OFF \Rightarrow \bigcirc



Advanced

Memory Card

- Check Available Memory Space of Memory Card
- Check & Repair Memory Card
- Delete Data on Memory Card
- Cancel Print Settings of Images

(P. 12-16)



Accessing Files

Start Here

| [File List] | Ρ. | 12-3 |
|---------------------------|----|------|
| [Opened File Window] | Ρ. | 12-3 |
| [Picture Window] | Ρ. | 12-3 |
| [Melody Window] | Ρ. | 12-4 |
| [Original Animation List] | P. | 12-4 |
| [Playlists Window] | Ρ. | 12-5 |

Opening Files

Check File Information

Change Order of Files

[File List] $\Rightarrow \textcircled{o} \Rightarrow Sort \Rightarrow \textcircled{o} \Rightarrow Select a$ criterion $\Rightarrow \textcircled{o}$

Set an Image to Appear in Standby

Set a Video to Appear in Standby

[File List] \Rightarrow Select a file \Rightarrow o \Rightarrow Stand-by Display \Rightarrow o \Rightarrow YES \Rightarrow o

Set a Melody/Video as Ringtone

[File List]/[Opened File Window] (\Rightarrow Select a file) \Rightarrow $\textcircled{o} \Rightarrow$ *Ring Tone* \Rightarrow $\textcircled{o} \Rightarrow$ Select an item \Rightarrow o

Only melodies can be set as ringtones from Opened File window.

Viewing Images

Play Animation from the Beginning

[Picture Window] ⇒ **②** ⇒ *Retry* ⇒ **③**

Compose Four Images to Make One

- Copyright-protected images are unavailable.
 Images saved on memory card cannot be used.
- Some images cannot be used depending on their size.

Set Display Size of an Image

Edit Title of an Original Animation

[Original Animation List] \Rightarrow Select an animation \Rightarrow $\textcircled{o} \Rightarrow$ Edit Title \Rightarrow $\textcircled{o} \Rightarrow$ Edit title \Rightarrow o

Cancel an Original Animation

[Original Animation List] ⇒ Select an animation ⇒ **(a)** ⇒ *Release Animation* ⇒ **(a)** ⇒ *YES* ⇒ **(b)**

5

Playing Melodies

Play All Melodies in the Same Folder Repeatedly

[Melody Window] ⇒ **(a)** ⇒ Set Repeat Play ⇒ **(b)** ⇒ ON ⇒ **(c)**

Playing Videos

Switch Display Format of File List

Clear a Playlist

[Playlists Window] ⇒ Select a playlist ⇒ **(a)**⇒ Release Playlist ⇒ **(b)** ⇒ YES ⇒ **(b)**

Editing Files

Start Here

[Picture Window]......P. 12-7

Retouch an Image

[Picture Window] ⇒ ⑥ ⇒ Edit Image ⇒
⑥ ⇒ Retouch ⇒ ⑥ ⇒ Select an effect ⇒
⑥ (three times) ⇒ YES or NO ⇒ ⑥

Adjust Image Brightness

[Picture Window] \Rightarrow $\textcircled{o} \Rightarrow$ *Edit Image* \Rightarrow $\textcircled{o} \Rightarrow$ *Brightness* \Rightarrow $\textcircled{o} \Rightarrow \textcircled{o}$ to adjust brightness \Rightarrow o (twice) \Rightarrow *YES* or *NO* \Rightarrow o

Rotate an Image

Change Image Size

Correct Backlight

Refresh Skin Tone

[Picture Window] ⇒ ⑥ ⇒ Edit Image ⇒ ⑥ ⇒ Refresh Skin Tone ⇒ ⑥ (three times) ⇒ YES or NO ⇒ ⑥

Managing Folders

Start Here

[Folder List] P. 12-9

Edit a Folder Name

[Folder List] ⇒ Select a folder ⇒ **(a)** ⇒ *Edit Folder Name* ⇒ **(b)** ⇒ Edit folder name ⇒

Only names of user-created folders and folders in *My Pictograms* can be edited.

Delete a Folder

[Folder List] ⇒ Select a folder ⇒ 🏚 🖈 **Delete Folder** ⇒ ● Enter Security Code \Rightarrow (\Rightarrow YES \Rightarrow (\Rightarrow YES \Rightarrow (\Rightarrow To Select Ring Songs⋅Music [Folder List] ⇒ Select a folder ⇒ 🍙 ⇒ **Delete Folder** ⇒ ● Enter Security Code Delete This. Delete Selected or Delete All ⇒ (•)(⇒ Select a folder ⇒ (•) ⇒

- Repeat to select another folder ⇒ (□)(⇒ YES or NO ⇒ •) ⇒ YES ⇒ • Only user-created folders can be deleted.
- Files in the selected folder are also deleted. When files that are set as wallpaper.
 - ringtone, alarm tone, etc. are deleted, their settings are reset to default.

Delete All Files in My Picture, Melody or Video Folder

[Folder List] \Rightarrow (a) \Rightarrow Delete all Image or Delete All ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ (●) ⇒ YES ⇒ (●)

When files that are set as wallpaper, ringtone, alarm tone, etc. are deleted, their settings are reset to default.

Managing Files

Start Here

[File List]P. 12-3

Edit a Title in My Picture File List

[File List] ⇒ Select an image file ⇒ 🏚 ⇒ Edit Title ⇒ • Edit title ⇒ •

Titles of files saved in Pre-installed folders cannot be edited.

Check Volume of Saved Files

[File List] ⇒ (a) ⇒ Memory Info ⇒ (•)

Edit a File Name

[File List] ⇒ Select a file ⇒ (a) ⇒ Edit File

Names of files saved in Pre-installed folders cannot be edited

Delete Files

[File List] ⇒ Select a file ⇒ 🏚 ⇒ Delete \Rightarrow (\bullet)

- To Delete the Selected File ⇒ Delete This ⇒ • YES ⇒ •
- To Delete Multiple Files
 - ⇒ Delete Selected ⇒ Select file ⇒ (repeat to select another file) ⇒ ∅ YES 🖈 💿
- To Delete All
- ⇒ Delete All ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ () ⇒ YES ⇒ ()

Memory Card

Start Here

[microSD Manager Window]............. P. 12-11 [Data Details] P. 12-11

Check Available Memory Space of Memory Card

[microSD Manager Window], [File List], [Data List] or [Data Details] \Rightarrow (a) microSD Info 🖈 🖲



Check & Repair Memory Card

[microSD Manager Window] 🗢 🄕 👄 Check microSD ⇒ ● YES ⇒ ●

- To cancel checking and repairing a memory card, press 🖾 or 🔼.
- Some memory cards may not be repairable.

Delete Data on Memory Card

[File List] ⇒ Select a data item ⇒ 🏚 🖈 Delete 🖈 🖲

- To Delete the Selected Item
- ⇒ Delete This ⇒ YES ⇒ •
- To Delete Multiple Items
 - ⇒ Delete Selected ⇒ Select file ⇒ (repeat to select another file) ⇒ □ YES ⇒ •
- To Delete All
 - ⇒ Delete All ⇒ Enter Security Code

Cancel Print Settings of Images

 \bigcirc \Rightarrow microSD \Rightarrow \bigcirc DCIM \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow Select a folder ⇒ ● Select a still image ⇒ **a** ⇒ DPOF Setting ⇒ **•** ⇒ DPOF set One or DPOF set Choice ⇒ (Select an image ⇒ ● (repeat to select another image) ⇒ (a) ⇒ Print OFF or All Print OFF \Rightarrow \bigcirc

Connectivity



| Infrared | 13-2 |
|--------------------------------------|--------|
| Getting Started | . 13-2 |
| Transferring Data via Infrared | . 13-3 |
| Connecting to PC | 13-5 |
| Basics | . 13-5 |
| Data Transfer | . 13-5 |
| Setting USB Mode | . 13-5 |
| Accessing Memory Card Data from a PC | . 13-5 |
| Using Handset as Modem | . 13-6 |



Getting Started

Wirelessly exchange files with infrared compatible devices. Handset supports IrSimple[™]-standard high-speed infrared transmission. Transfer large-size data quickly with compatible devices (mobile phone, printer, etc.).

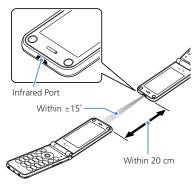
The following files are transferable:

- · Still images
- Melodies
- Videos
- · My Pictograms
- Sonas
- · Phone Book entries. Account Details
- Schedule events
- To Do List tasks
- · Received/sent messages
- · Draft messages
- Text memos
- · Common Phrases (Templates)
- · Own Dictionary data
- Bookmarks (Yahoo! Keitai/PC Site Browser)

Precautions

- File transfer may not start depending on receiving device status. Some settings or content may be lost depending on the receiving handset model.
- Handset is out of range during infrared transmission, so such functions as voice and video calls, the Internet access and sending/receiving S! Mails are unavailable. This may continue even after infrared transmission is finished.
- Transferring data may take a while depending on the amount of data. Some data may not be received by handset.
- During transmission, progress bar shows approximate number of files transferred. Note that actual progress may be faster.
- Some pictographs and symbols in messages and Phone Book entries may not be received by handset correctly.

 Align Infrared Ports of both sending and receiving devices, as shown below.



- Do not move either device until a message appears indicating completion of data transmission. Do not place any objects between the devices. Do not obstruct Infrared Ports.
- Infrared transmission may be disrupted by direct sunlight, directly under fluorescent lighting or near other infrared devices.

•••

Authentication Password

To transfer multiple files at once, the same authentication password must be entered on both sending and receiving devices.

Transferring Data via Infrared

Sending One File

Send one file at a time.

- Select a file ⇒ **(a)** ⇒ Send Ir Data ⇒ **(a)**
- 2 Set the receiving device to receive data
- 3 Align Infrared Ports ⇒ YES ⇒ ●
 Transfer starts.
 Message appears when file transfer is
 - To Cancel Transfer

complete.

Note

 File transfer is unavailable for Phone Book entries saved on USIM Card.

qiT

- In a data list window, press

 image via high-speed transmission (IrSS™ function).
- In the case of high-speed transmission (IrSS™ function) of JPEG images, the receiving device may fail to receive images, even when the image transmission is successfully completed by the sending device.

Receiving One File

- 2 Align Infrared Ports
 Transfer starts.
- To Cancel Transfer
- 3 When file is received ⇒ YES ⇒ File is saved to handset.
 File is discarded if no operation is performed within 30 seconds of transfer.

Sending All Files

Send all files at one time from a data list window/data details window.

- 1 In a data list window/data details window ⇔ **③** ⇔ *Send All Ir Data* ⇔ **⑤**
- 2 Enter Security Code ⇒ ⇒ Enter authentication password
- 3 Set the receiving device to receive data
- 4 Align Infrared Ports ⇒ YES ⇒ Transfer starts. When all files are sent, a message appears indicating completion of transfer.
 - To Cancel Transfer

 ⇔ 🖾

Note

- All file transfer is unavailable for still image, melody, video, My Pictogram and song files.
- File transfer is unavailable for Phone Book entries saved on USIM Card.

Receiving All Files

- ⇒ Tools ⇒ ⇒ Receive Ir Data ⇒ • Receive All ⇒ •
- 2 Enter Security Code ⇒ ⇒ Enter authentication password
- Align Infrared Ports ⇒ **YES** ⇒ Transfer starts.
- When an overwrite confirmation appears ⇒ **YES** ⇒ ●

Transfer starts

Message appears when files are saved to handset.

■ To Cancel Transfer $\Rightarrow \boxtimes$

Note

- Existing handset files are overwritten (e.g. When all messages are transferred, existing messages, including protected messages are overwritten. When all Phone Book/Schedule entries are transferred, all data including secret data is overwritten).
- · File transfer stops when maximum storable capacity is reached.

More Features

Customize

Phone Book

 Do Not Send Phone Book Entry Images via Infrared

(P. 14-12)

Basics

Connect handset to a PC via USB cable to use the following functions.

USB cable is sold separately.

| Data transfer* | Transfer Phone Book, Schedule and To Do List data between handset and a PC (P. 13-5). |
|----------------|---|
| USB memory | Use memory card inserted in handset as an external drive of a PC to read and write data with memory card (P. 13-5). |

^{*} USB driver must be installed in advance.

USB Driver

Install USB Driver to connect handset to a PC. Download USB Driver from the following site (Japanese).

http://www.n-keitai.com/guide/download/

Data Transfer

Use Data Transfer Tool to transfer data between handset and a PC. Download Data Transfer Tool from the following site (Japanese).

http://www.n-keitai.com/guide/download/

 Install USB Driver before using Data Transfer Tool.

Setting USB Mode

Set USB mode before connecting handset to your PC via USB cable.

- 2 Communication Mode or microSD Mode ⇒ ●

Select Communication Mode for Internet tethering (packet transmission) or using Data Transfer Tool. Use microSD Mode for accessing memory card data from a PC.

Accessing Memory Card Data from a PC

Connect handset to your PC using a USB cable, and access memory card data from the PC.

- Set USB Mode Setting to microSD Mode in advance.
- 1 Connect handset to your PC using a USB cable

This enables memory card data to be accessed from your PC.

When you are finished, disconnect handset from the PC

Follow the procedure for safely removing external devices (which differs slightly according to the operating system), when disconnecting handset from the PC.

Note

- · Make sure handset and the PC are properly connected. Otherwise, data cannot be transferred, and may even be lost.
- If handset's battery is almost or completely empty, data cannot be transferred, and may even be lost. Check handset's battery level and the power of your PC.
- Do not remove the USB cable while copying data from your PC to handset. If the USB cable is removed during data transfer, data cannot be transferred, and may even be lost.

Using Handset as Modem

Use handset as an external modem for packet transmission

- Refer to the instructions of your Internet service provider or the manual of your PC for the network connection settings on your PC.
- To use "Access Internet" for data communication, you do not have to sign up with a service provider. For information about the service overview, access points and setting procedures, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P. 15-51).

Customization



| Clock, Display & Sounds | . 14-2 |
|-------------------------|--------|
| Phone Book & Calls | |
| Mail | |
| Internet | 14-19 |
| TV | |
| Camera | |
| S! Appli | 14-24 |
| Entertainment | |
| Other Settings | |



Clock

| Hide Clock | \Rightarrow Clock Display \Rightarrow \bullet \Rightarrow Display \Rightarrow \bullet \Rightarrow OFF \Rightarrow \bullet | |
|-----------------------------|--|--|
| Clock Size | ⇒ Clock Display ⇒ ● ⇒ Size ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a size ⇒ ● | |
| Clock Color | ⇒ Clock Display ⇒ ● ⇒ Color ⇒ ● ⇒ Black or White ⇒ ● | |
| Set Auto Time Adjustment | ⇒ Set Main Time ⇒ ● ⇒ Time Adjustment ⇒ ● ⇒ Auto ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a time zone ⇒ ● • Press ⊜ to change city/area name in Time Zone Selection field. • If auto time adjustment is still not performed, open Yahoo! Keitai top page again and perform Reload before returning to Standby. | |
| Manually Adjust Time | ⇒ Set Main Time ⇒ ● ⇒ Time Adjustment ⇒ ● ⇒ Manual(Date Time Set) ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a time zone ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter date and time ⇒ ● | |
| Summer Time | ⇒ Set Main Time ⇒ ● ⇒ Summer Time ⇒ ● ⇒ ON ⇒ ● | |

| Time Zone (Sub Clock) | ⇒ Set Sub Clock ⇔ ● ⇒ Display Method ⇒ ● ⇒ Always ⇔ ● (⇒ YES ⇒ ●)⇒ Select a time zone ⇔ ● |
|----------------------------|--|
| Hide Sub Clock | ⇒ Set Sub Clock ⇒ ● ⇒ Display Method ⇒ ● ⇒ OFF ⇒ ● |
| Summer Time (Sub Clock) | $\Rightarrow \textit{Set Sub Clock} \Rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet} \Rightarrow \textit{Summer Time} \\ \Rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet} \Rightarrow \textit{ON} \Rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet}$ |

Alarm

| Set Priority at Alarm Notification Time | Alarm Setting | |
|---|--|--|
| Change Alarm Tone | ⇒ Clock Alarm Tone Set ⇒ ● ⇒ Select an item ⇒ ● ⇒ Set an alarm tone | |



Auto Power On/Off

| | Settings O Ock O |
|---------|---|
| On/Off* | Auto Power ON or Auto Power OFF ⇒ ● |
| | ⇒ ON ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter time ⇒ ● ⇒ 1 Time |
| | or <i>Daily</i> ⇔ ⊙ |

* When near high precision electronic devices or devices using weak signals, or in areas where handset use is forbidden (aboard aircraft, in hospitals, etc.), set Auto Power ON to OFF and turn handset power off.

Style Mode Settings



| Change Each Item for Favorites | <i>⇒ お気に入り</i> (Favorites) <i>⇒</i> ^(図) <i>⇒</i> Select an item <i>⇒</i> ^(®) <i>⇒</i> Set an image |
|--------------------------------|--|
| Clear All Favorite | ⇒ お気に入り (Favorites) ⇒ ⑩ ⇒ Reset |
| Settings | Setting Info ⇒ ● ⇒ YES ⇒ ● |

Display Settings

| Start Here \bigcirc \Rightarrow Settings \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow Display \Rightarrow \bigcirc | | |
|--|---|--|
| Wallpaper | ⇒ Display Setting ⇒ ● ⇒ Stand-by Display ⇒ ● ⇒ My Picture or Videos ⇒ ● ⇒ Set an image/video (⇒ Select a layout ⇒ ● (twice)) | |
| Show Calendar in Standby | ⇒ Display Setting ⇒ ● ⇒ Stand-by Display ⇒ ● ⇒ Calendar ⇒ ● ⇒ Background ⇒ ● ⇒ Set an image ⇒ Select a layout ⇒ ● (twice) • Select No Background if you do not want any image in the background of the calendar. • Press ⑤, use ② to select the calendar and press ● to operate it. Use ③ to switch to the previous/next month. Press ● to activate Schedule. | |



| Set Wallpaper Image to Change When Handset Returns to Standby | ⇒ Display Setting ⇒ ● ⇒ Stand-by Display ⇒ ● ⇒ Random Display ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a folder ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a layout ⇒ ● • Each time handset returns to Standby, a different wallpaper image appears. Images are randomly selected from the set folder. |
|---|--|
| Set a Wake-up Image | ⇒ Display Setting ⇒ ● ⇒ Wake-up Display ⇒ ● ⇒ My Picture ⇒ ● ⇒ Set an image |
| Set a Wake-up Message | ⇒ Display Setting ⇒ ● ⇒ Wake-up Display ⇒ ● ⇒ Message ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter message ⇒ ● |
| Set an Outgoing Call/Message Image | ⇒ Display Setting ⇒ ● ⇒ Dialing, Video Call Dialing or Mail Sending ⇒ ● ⇒ Set an image |
| Set Image or Video for Incoming Call/Message | ⇒ Display Setting ⇒ ● ⇒ Calling, Video Call Calling or Mail Receiving ⇒ ● ⇒ Select Calling Disp. or Select Receiving Disp. ⇒ ● (⇒ My Picture or Videos ⇒ ●) ⇒ Set an image/video |
| Set Image for New Message/Received Result Window | ⇒ Display Setting ⇒ ● ⇒ Retrieve New or Mail Rec'd Result ⇒ ● ⇒ Set an image |
| Display Color Scheme | ⇒ Display Design ⇒ ● ⇒ Color Theme ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a color ⇒ ● |

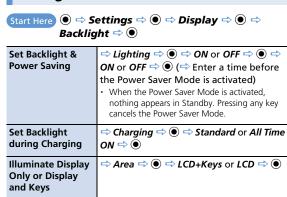
| Battery Level Indicator/Signal Strength Indicator Design | ⇒ Display Design ⇒ ● ⇒ Icon Pattern ⇒ ● ⇒ Battery Icon or Antenna Icon ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a pattern ⇒ ● |
|---|---|
| Set Softkey Color | ⇒ Display Design ⇒ ● ⇒ Soft Key ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a color ⇒ ● |
| Set Font Type | ⇒ Font ⇒ ● ⇒ Font Type ⇒ ● ⇒ Gothic or Ming-cho ⇒ ● • Alternatively, press and hold ७ in Standby to make font settings. |
| Set Font Thickness | ⇒ Font ⇒ ● ⇒ Thickness ⇒ ● ⇒ Thin or Bold ⇒ ● • Alternatively, press and hold ⑦ in Standby to make font settings. |
| Set Font Sizes Collectively | ⇒ Font ⇒ ● ⇒ Character Size ⇒ ● ⇒ Standard or X-large ⇒ ● Items settable with Separate Setting for Character Size can be set collectively. Alternatively, press and hold ¬ in Standby to make font settings. |
| Set Font Size for Each Function Window | ⇒ Font ⇒ ● ⇒ Character Size ⇒ ● ⇒ Separate Setting ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a window ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a size ⇒ ● ⇒ ⑤ • Alternatively, press and hold ▼ in Standby to make font settings. • In PC Site Browser, only available in Small Screen view. |



| Interface Language | |
|--|--|
| Set Image List View | ⇒ Viewer Settings ⇒ ● ⇒ Picture or Title ⇒ ● |
| Guard from Prying Eyes | ⇒ Privacy Angle ⇒ ● N ⇒ ● Alternatively, press and hold ■ in Standby to toggle on and off. When Privacy Angle is set, Display is whitish and the viewing angle is narrower. Turn power off then on again to cancel Privacy Angle. |
| Show New Message Info While Viewing TV | ⇒ Quick Info Setting ⇒ ● ⇒ Display Sender or Display Sender/Subject ⇒ ● |
| Set Effect for Screen Change | ⇒ Screen Effect ⇒ ● ⇒ Select an item ⇒ ● Select an item and press ⁽²⁾ to check details. |

Backlight

Set Brightness of Backlight



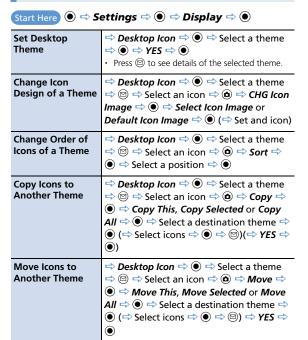
⇒ Select a Level ⇒ •

decreases battery time.

⇒ Brightness ⇒ • ON or OFF ⇒ •

When set to *ON*, Display Backlight automatically adjusts to surrounding brightness.
 Middle is set by default. Setting to *Bright*

Desktop Icons



| Delete Icons of a Theme | ⇒ Desktop Icon ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a theme ⇒ ⊜ ⇒ Select an icon ⇒ ⊕ ⇒ Delete ⇒ ● ⇒ Delete This, Delete Selected or Delete All ⇒ ● (⇒ Select icons ⇒ ● ⇒ ⊜) ⇒ YES ⇒ ● |
|--|---|
| Show New Message Indicator in 3D | ⇒ 3D Display Setting ⇒ ● ⇒ ON ⇒ ● |



Menu Display Settings

| List View and | ⇒ Menu Display ⇒ ● ⇒ List or Detail ⇒ |
|---|--|
| Details View | Werld Display Elst of Detail |
| | Select View for menus from Settings O Settings O |
| Set Main Menu Theme | ightharpoonup Theme $ ightharpoonup$ $ ightharpoonup$ Select a theme $ ightharpoonup$ |
| Change Icon Design (Original Theme) | ⇒ Theme ⇒ ● ⇒ Original Theme ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a menu item ⇒ ● ⇒ Set an image • Change Main Menu icons to any preferred image. • Press ⊚ to check current setting. |
| Change Background (Original Theme) | ⇒ Theme ⇒ ● ⇒ Original Theme ⇒ ● ⇒ Background Image ⇒ ● ⇒ Set an image • Change Main Menu background to any preferred image. • Press ⑤ to check current setting. |
| Reset Original Theme Settings | ⇒ Theme ⇒ ● ⇒ Original Theme ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a menu item ⇒ ● ⇒ Reset or All reset ⇒ ● ⇒ YES ⇒ ● • Only available when any Original theme settings have been changed. |

| Save Last Selected Menu Item to Memory | → Memory Focus ○ ○ ○ ○ ○ ○ ○ |
|--|--|
| Start Here | |
| Add a Menu Item to Original Menu | \Rightarrow Select an item \Rightarrow \circledcirc \Rightarrow Select a function \Rightarrow \bigcirc (\Rightarrow YES \Rightarrow \bigcirc) |
| Change Order of Original Menu Items | ⇒ Select an item ⇒ ② ⇒ Sort ⇒ ③ ⇒ Select a position ⇒ ③ |
| Cancel Original Menu Items | ⇒ Select an item ⇒ ② ⇒ <i>Release</i> or <i>Release All</i> ⇒ ③ ⇒ <i>YES</i> ⇒ ③ |
| Reset Original Menu | |

Standby Indicators Enable Indicator Selector Settings Display Note: Not



Sub-display



| Notifications/ Animation | ⇒ Disp. Clock Only ⇒ ● ⇒ ON ⇒ ● Select OFF to set notifications (incoming messages, etc.) and animation (alarm, etc.) to appear. |
|-----------------------------|---|
| Set Clock Pattern | ⇒ Clock Type ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a pattern ⇒ ● ⇒ 🖾 |
| Set Messages to Appear | ⇒ Called, Mail or Connection ⇒ ● ⇒ ON ⇒ ● ⇒ ⊠ |
| Set Time Signal | ⇒ Time Signal ⇒ ● ⇒ ON ⇒ ● ⇒ 30 Minutes or 60 Minutes ⇒ ● ⇒ □ |
| Set Viewable Time | \Rightarrow Display Time \Rightarrow |

Incoming Call/Message Alerts

| Start Here | Start Here ● ⇒ Settings ⇒ ● ⇒ Incoming Call ⇒ ● | |
|---|---|--|
| Adjust Ringtone Volume | ⇒ Ring Volume ⇒ ● ⇒ Phone, Video Call or Mail ⇒ ● ⇒ ♦ to adjust volume ⇒ ● • When Step is set, the ringtone volume increases every three seconds. When Silent is set, no ringtone sounds. | |
| Set a Ringtone | ⇒ Select Ring Tone ⇒ ● ⇒ Phone, Video Call or Mail ⇒ ● ⇒ Select Ring Tone ⇒ ● ⇒ Select an item ⇒ ● (⇒ Select a folder ⇒ ●) ⇒ Set a ringtone | |
| Set Random Playback of Melodies as Ringtones | ⇒ Select Ring Tone ⇒ ● ⇒ Phone, Video Call or Mail ⇒ ● ⇒ Select Ring Tone ⇒ ● ⇒ Random Melody ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a folder ⇒ ● • Melodies in the selected folder are played at random as ringtones. | |
| Set Ringtone Duration for Incoming Message | → Mail Ring Time → ● → ON → ● → Enter ringing duration When OFF is set, no ringtone sounds and handset does not vibrate when receiving messages. | |



| Set Vibration* | ⇒ Vibrator ⇒ ● ⇒ Phone, Video Call or Mail ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a pattern ⇒ ● • When Melody Linkage is set, handset vibration is linked to the set ringtone melody. Handset may not vibrate depending on the set ringtone. |
|--|--|
| Set Illumination Color | ⇒ Illumination ⇒ ● ⇒ Set Color ⇒ ● ⇒ Phone, Video Call or Mail ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a color ⇒ ● |
| Set Illumination Pattern | ⇒ Illumination ⇒ ● ⇒ Set Pattern ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a pattern ⇒ ● • When Melody Linkage is set, illumination pattern is linked to the set ringtone melody. Illumination may not flash depending on the set ringtone. |
| Set Illumination to Flash for Missed Calls/New Messages | ⇒ Illumination ⇒ |
| Set Handset Action When Handset Opened | ⇒ Setting when Opened ⇒ ● ⇒ Select action ⇒ ● ⇒ 🖾 |
| Set an Incoming Call/Message Image | ⇒ Select Ring Tone ⇒ ● ⇒ Phone, Video Call or Mail ⇒ ● ⇒ Select Calling Disp. or Select Receiving Disp. ⇒ ● (⇔ My Picture or Videos ⇒ ●) ⇒ Set an image/video |

| | ⇒ Disp. Phone Book Image ⇒ ● ⇒ ON ⇒ ● |
|-----------------|--|
| Incoming Calls/ | |
| Messages | |

^{*} When *Vibrator* is not set to *OFF*, be careful not to let handset fall off a desk or slide too close to a stove, etc. when it vibrates.

Answering Incoming Calls

| Start Here | |
|--|--|
| Set to Answer Calls by Pressing Any Key | ⇒ Answer Setting ⇒ ● ⇒ Any Key Answer ⇒ ● • Answer incoming voice calls by pressing a key from ∠, ●, □ - ᠑, ★, ⊚, ♡, ⊕, and ⊕. The any key answer function is disabled for incoming video calls. |
| Set to Mute Ringtone by Pressing Any Key | ⇒ Answer Setting ⇒ ● ⇒ Quick Silent ⇒ ● • Mute the ringtone by pressing a key from □ - ᠑, ★, ⊚ (for voice calls only), ⊙, ∄₁₁- and ۞ or by opening handset. |

Manner Mode

Start Here ●

Settings

Incoming Call

Settings

Incoming Call

Settings

Setting Manner Mode Set ⇒ ●

| Set Manner Mode Type | ⇒ Select a Manner Mode ⇒ ● • When Super Silent is set, all tones emitted through the earpiece are also muted. |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| Configure Original Manner Mode | ⇒ Original ⇒ ● ⇒ Set each item ⇒ 🖾 |

Checking Call Logs

⇒ Info Notice Setting ⇒ ● ⇒ ON ⇒ ●

Notify Missed Calls with Tone (When Thusic Pressed)

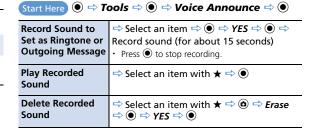
· Two short beeps sound twice when there are missed calls, and three short beeps sound when there are none

Change Colors of Names, Phone Numbers and F-mail Addresses in Call and Message Log Windows

- ⇒ Disp. Call/Receive No. ⇒ ⇒ Select a color ⇒ (●) Press (a) to toggle the color palette between 16
- colors and 256 colors.
- To reset the color settings, press (9).

Sounds

Set Key Sound Off ⇒ Keypad Sound ⇒ • OFF ⇒ • Set to Play ⇒ Charge Sound ⇒ ● → ON ⇒ ● Charging Start/End Tones



Earphone-Microphone

| | 3 . 0 |
|---|--|
| Audio Output | ⇒ External Connection ⇒ ● ⇒ Headset Usage Setting ⇒ ● ⇒ Headset+speaker or Headset Only ⇒ ● |
| Microphone Setting | ⇒ External Connection ⇒ ● ⇒ Headset Mic. Setting ⇒ ● ⇒ Built-in Microphone or Headset Microphone ⇒ ● |
| Answer Calls Automatically | \Rightarrow External Connection \Rightarrow $\textcircled{\bullet}$ \Rightarrow Auto Answer Setting \Rightarrow $\textcircled{\bullet}$ \Rightarrow Phone or Video Call \Rightarrow $\textcircled{\bullet}$ \Rightarrow ON \Rightarrow $\textcircled{\bullet}$ \Rightarrow Enter ring time |
| Save a Phone Number for One-touch Dialing from Earphone- Microphone | ⇒ Dialing ⇒ ● ⇒ Headset SW to Dial ⇒ ● ⇒ Voice Call ⇒ ● ⇒ Search Phone Book ⇒ Select an entry ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a phone number ⇒ ● |

Phone Book

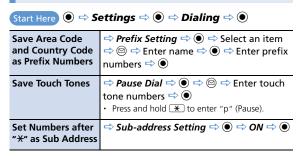
| Set Preferred Search Method | [Phone Book Search Window] (P. 2-20) ⇒ Select a search method ⇒ ⑤ ⇒ OK ⇒ ⑥ • To cancel the preferred search method, press (LLAM) in Phone Book Search window, select the search method with ★, and then press ⑥. |
|---|--|
| Change Group Name | [Phone Book Entry List] (P. 2-20) |
| Do Not Send Phone Book Entry Images via Infrared | ♠ ¬ Tools ¬ ♠ ¬ Forwarding Image ¬ ♠ ♠ ¬ OFF ¬ ♠ ● |

S! Addressbook Back-up

| Set Auto | Auto Sync Settings |
|-------------|---|
| Synchronize | ● ⇒ ON ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ |
| | ● ⇒ Select synchronize timing ⇒ ● (⇒ |
| | Set synchronize cycle and day) ⇒ Select synchronize type ⇒ ● ⇒ YES ⇒ ● |
| | synchronize type ⇒ ● ⇒ YES ⇒ ● |
| | (twice) |
| | |

| Set Auto Synchronize Off | \Rightarrow Auto Sync Settings \Rightarrow $\textcircled{0}$ \Rightarrow ON/OFF \Rightarrow $\textcircled{0}$ \Rightarrow OFF \Rightarrow $\textcircled{0}$ |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| Check Auto Synchronize Settings | ⇔ Auto Sync Settings ⇔ |

Outgoing Calls



Phone Book & Calls



International Calls

| Change International Access Code Automatically Dialed with "+" | Auto Int'l Call Set. |
|--|---|
| Change a Country Code | ⇒ Country Code Setting ⇒ ⊕ ⇒ Select an item ⇒ ⊕ ⇒ Enter country name ● ⇒ Enter country code ⇒ ● |
| Save an International Access Code | ⇒ IDD Prefix Setting ⇒ ● ⇒ Select an item ⇒ ⊕ ⇒ Enter international access name ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter international access code ⇒ ● |

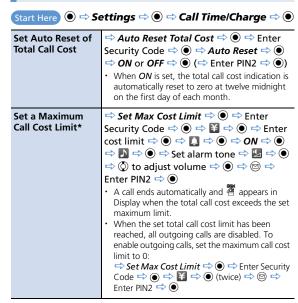
| Call | Settings |
|------|-----------------|
| Call | Settings |

Tone

Set Reconnection ⇒ Reconnect Signal ⇒ ● ⇒ High Tone or *Low Tone* ⇒ ●

| Set Noise Reduction | ⇒ Noise Reduction ⇒ ● ⇒ ON ⇒ ● |
|--|--|
| Set Weak Signal Alarm | ⇒ Quality Alarm ⇒ ● ⇒ High Tone or Low Tone ⇒ ● Alarm may not sound before call is disconnected, if signal strength drops suddenly. |
| Set Clarity of Other Party Voice | \Rightarrow Hyper Clear Voice \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow High, Low or OFF \Rightarrow \bigcirc |
| Change Color of Illumination While Calling | \Rightarrow Illumination in Talk \Rightarrow \odot \Rightarrow Select a pattern \Rightarrow \odot |
| Set Outgoing Message while Call is on Hold | ⇒ Set Hold Tone ⇒ ● ⇒ On Hold Tone ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a hold tone ⇒ ● (⇒ ●) • Select a hold tone and press ⊜ to check guidance message. |
| Set Closing Sound Off | \Rightarrow Setting when Folded \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow No Tone \Rightarrow \bigcirc |
| End Call By Closing Handset | \Rightarrow Setting when Folded \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow End the Call \Rightarrow \bigcirc |

Call Costs



* Cost display may not be available depending on your subscription. If unavailable, you will also be unable to set a cost limit.

Video Calls

| Start Here | ettings ⇨ • Þ Video Call ⇨ • |
|---|---|
| Set Outgoing Image for Video Calls | ⇒ Select Image ⇒ Select an item ● ⇒ Pre-installed or Original ⇒ ● • To set an image other than the preinstalled image: ⇒ Original ⇒ ⊕ ⇒ Change Setting ⇒ ● ⇒ Set an image • Press ⊚ to check image. |
| Redial Automatically as Voice Call When Video Call Connection Fails | ⇒ Auto Redial as Voice ⇒ ● ⇔ ON ⇒ ● |
| Set an Image to Appear in Main Window | Display Setting |
| Automatically Switch to Handsfree Mode in Video Calls | ⇔ Hands-free Switch ⇒ ● ⇒ ON ⇒ ● |

Global Roaming



| Set Operator | NW Search Mode |
|-------------------------------|--|
| Search Available Operator | ⇒ NW Search Mode ⇒ ● Network Re-search ⇒ ● ⇒ Select an operator ● Available when NW Search Mode is set to Manual. |
| Set Priority for Operators | ⇒ NW Search Mode ⇒ ● ⇒ PLMN Setting ⇒ ● ⇒ Select an operator ⇒ ● |
| | ⇒ Change Priority ⇒ ⊕ ⇒ Select a position on the priority list ⇒ ⊕ ⇒ ⊕ • When Auto is set under NW Search Mode, you are automatically connected to the highest priority operator among available operators. |



S! Mail Settings

| Edit Header/ Signature | ⇒ Header/Signature ⇒ ● Edit Header or Edit Signature ⇒ ● (twice) ⇒ Edit header/signature ⇒ ⑤ |
|--|--|
| Insert Header/ Signature Automatically | ⇒ Header/Signature |
| Request Delivery Report | ⇒ S! Mail Settings ⇒ ● ⇒ Delivery Report ⇒ ● ⇒ ON ⇒ ● • Delivery Report arrives when recipient has received your S! Mail. S! Mail Report appears in Subject field of Delivery Report. |

SMS Settings

| Report | Delivery Report arrives when recipient has received your SMS message. SMS Report appears in Subject field of Delivery Report. |
|---------------------------|---|
| Set Server Storage | SMS Validity Period ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a |
| Period of SMS | period ⇒ ● |
| Messages | • When <i>None</i> is set. SMS messages you send are |

not stored on the server.

| Set SMS Input Character ⇒ SMS Input Character ⇒ Japanese (70char.) or English(160char.) ⇒ ● |
|---|
|---|

Incoming Message Settings

| Start Here Star | |
|---|---|
| Customize E-mail Address | → Custom Mail Address → ● → Follow onscreen instructions Confirmation message arrives when setup is complete. Use the information to update Account Details. |
| Do Not Show Emotion Indicators | ⇒ Emotion/Keyword ⇒ ● ⇒ Uncheck Disp. Emotion ⇒ 🖾 |
| Show Keyword Indicators | ⇒ Emotion/Keyword ⇒ ● ⇒ Put a checkmark to Disp. Keyword ⇒ Select a keyword entry field ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter keyword ⇒ © ⇒ © • When handset receives an S! Mail containing the specified keyword, a keyword indicator → → → ⇒ appears. • In case a message contains both the content that matches an emotion indicator (P. 5-9) and a specified keyword, the keyword indicator takes priority. |

| Delete Keywords | ⇒ Emotion/Keyword ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a keyword ⇒ ● ⇒ Delete Keyword or Delete All Keyword ⇒ ● ⇒ YES ⇒ ● ⇒ ● To delete all keywords, uncheck Disp. Keyword. |
|--|---|
| Set Priority When Receiving Messages during Operation | ⇒ Receiving Setting ⇔ ● ⇒ Alarm Preferred or Operation Preferred ⇔ ● |
| Read Out Received Mail (Text to Speech) Setting | ⇒ Read Out Setting ⇒ ● Pead Out Received Mail ⇒ ● ON or OFF ⇒ ● ON or OFF Mail is only read out while in Japanese Language Mode. |
| Set Voice to Read Out Messages | ⇒ Read Out Setting ⇒ ● ⇒ Select Voice ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a voice type → Mail is only read out while in Japanese Language Mode. |
| Manually Retrieve Complete Messages | ⇒ S! Mail Settings ⇒ ● ⇒ Message Download ⇒ ● ⇒ Manual ⇒ ● Complete messages are retrieved manually. |

Reply Settings

| Signature |
|-------------------------------|
| ⇒ ● ⇒ Edit quotation mark ⇒ ● |

Message Window/Messaging Settings

| Start Here | |
|--|---|
| Set Message List View | ⇒ Mail List Disp. ⇒ ● ⇒ 2 Lines, 1 Line or 1 Line+Body ⇒ ● ⇒ Subject, Name or Address ⇒ ● |
| Set Auto-Play for Melody Attachments | ⇒ Start Attachment(auto) ⇒ ● ⇒ ON ⇒ ● Automatic play only for received mail. |
| Set Scroll Unit | ⇒ Scroll ⇒ ● ⇒ 1 Line, 3 Lines or 5 Lines ⇒ ● |
| Set Font Size | ⇒ Font Size ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a size ⇒ ● |
| Change Address for Reporting Spam | ⇒ Report Spam Setting ⇒ ● ⇒ Edit address ⇒ ● ⇒ YES ⇒ ● |
| Check Mail Settings | ⇔ Check Mail Settings • ● |
| Restore to Default Settings | ⇒ Reset Mail Settings ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ ● ⇒ YES ⇒ ● |



SMS Server Settings

⇒ ● ⇒ SMS Center Selection ⇒ ●

Change SMS ⇒ **819066519300** ⇒ **●** ⇒ Enter SMS Center Address Unknown ⇒ ● · Address is 819066519300 by default. SMS may become unavailable if Center address is changed. ⇒ Reset ⇒ • Enter Security Code ⇒ Reset to SoftBank **SMS Center** Address

36

Internet

Number

Start Here for Yahoo! Keitai Press and hold ♀ ⇔ Browser Settings ♀ ●

Start Here for PC Site Browser Press and hold

Press an

| Set Scroll Unit/Speed | ⇒ Scroll ⇒ ● ⇒ Whole Page, Half Page or Single Line ⇒ ● |
|--|---|
| Enable/Disable Image Download | Downloads |
| Set Auto-Play for Melody Attachments | Downloads ⇒ ● ⇒ Play Sounds ⇒ ● ⇒ ON or OFF ⇒ ● |
| Clear Cache | Dhemory Manager → ● → Delete Cache → ● → Enter Security Code → ● YES → ● |
| Delete Cookies | → Memory Manager |
| Initialize Memory Status of Internet | ➡ Initialized Browser ➡ ➡ Enter Security Code ➡ ♠ YES ➡ |
| Set Whether to Send Manufacture | ⇒ Security ⇒ ● ⇒ Manufacture Number ⇒ ● ⇒ ON or OFF ⇒ ● |

| Set Whether to | ⇒ Security ⇒ ● ⇒ Send Referer ⇒ ● |
|----------------------------|---|
| Send Referer | ⇒ ON or OFF ⇒ ● |
| Enable/Disable Cookies | ⇒ Security ⇒ ● ⇒ Cookie Settings ⇒ ● ⇒ Select an option ⇒ ● |
| Check Internet | ⇒ Check Settings or Check PC Site Brw. |
| Settings | Set ⇒ ● |
| Reset Internet Settings | ⇒ Reset or Reset PC Site Brw. Set ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ ● → YES ⇒ ● |

Yahoo! Keitai

| Start Here Press and hold ⊕ ⇒ Browser Settings ⇒ ● | |
|--|--|
| Set Font Size | \Rightarrow Font Size \Rightarrow © \Rightarrow Select a size \Rightarrow © |
| Set Flash [®] Sound On/Off | ⇒ Flash Sound Effect ⇒ ● ⇒ ON or OFF ⇒ ● |

PC Site Browser

Start Here Press and hold $\textcircled{v} \Rightarrow PC$ Site Browser $\Rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet} \Rightarrow PC$ Site Brw. Settings $\Rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet}$

Do Not Show Alert
When Activating
PC Site Browser &
Switching
Browsers

Set Page Layout

Display Mode Settings
PC
Screen or Small Screen
Select a Script
Setting

Select an option
Select an

Providing Location Info

Channel List



| Change Title of Channel List | ⇒ Select a channel list ⇒ (a) ⇒ <i>Edit Title</i> ⇒ (b) ⇒ Edit title ⇒ (b) |
|---|--|
| Delete a Channel List | ⇒ Select a channel list ⇒ ® ⇒ <i>Delete This</i> ⇒ ® ⇒ <i>YES</i> ⇒ ® • The currently used channel list cannot be deleted. |
| Assign Channels to Remote Control Numbers | ⇒ Select a channel list ⇒ ⑤ ⇒ ⑥ ⇒ Remote Control No. ⇒ ⑥ ⇒ Select a remote control number ⇒ ⑥ ⇒ Select a channel ⇒ ⑥ ⇒ Repeat the same step ⇒ ⑥ ⇒ YES ⇒ ⑥ |
| Delete a Channel | ⇒ Select a channel list ⇒ ⊚ ⇒ Select a channel ⇒ ③ ⇒ <i>Delete This</i> ⇒ ⑤ ⇒ <i>YES</i> ⇒ ⑥ Delete a channel from any channel list except for the currently used list. |

Image & Sound

| Start Here | ● ⇒ TV ⇒ ● | ⇒ User Settings | ⇒ ● |
|------------|-------------------|-----------------|------------|
|------------|-------------------|-----------------|------------|

| Set Subtitle Display | ⇒ Subtitles ⇒ ● ⇒ ON(Wide:Bottom), ON(Wide:Top) or OFF ⇒ ● |
|---|---|
| Show/Hide Icons in Landscape View | \Rightarrow Icon Always Show \Rightarrow $\textcircled{0}$ \Rightarrow ON or OFF \Rightarrow $\textcircled{0}$ |
| Save Battery by Dimming Backlight | → TV Power Saving → YES → Following these steps when TV Power Saving is on will cancel TV Power Saving. |
| Set Sound On While Handset Closed | → TV Sound While Closed → ● → ON → ● When set to ON and handset is closed, a page connected from data broadcast automatically updates. Packet transmission fees apply. |
| Keep Backlight On When Viewing TV | ⇒ Display Light ⇒ ● ⇒ Constant Light ⇒ ● TV Power Saving must be off to set Display Light. |
| Set Backlight Duration for Viewing TV | ⇒ Display Light ⇒ ● ⇒ Lighting Duration ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter lighting time • TV Power Saving must be off to set Display Light. |



Data Broadcasts

| Set Whether to Show Images in Pages Accessed from Data Broadcasts | ⇒ Set Image Disp. ⇒ ● ⇒ ON or OFF ⇒ ● |
|---|--|
| Enable/Disable Sound Effects of Data Broadcasts | \Rightarrow Sound Effect \Rightarrow $lacktriangle$ \Rightarrow ON or OFF \Rightarrow $lacktriangle$ |
| Show Confirmation Window Again | Reset Disp. Set. ⇒ ● ⇒ YES ⇒ ● Once you select YES(By default) in a confirmation window for accessing a web page from Data Broadcast, the window no longer appears. Use this procedure to set the window to reappear. |

Recording Programs

| Continue/End | |
|--------------|------------------------------------|
| | Rec. While Low Battery ⇒ ● ⇒ ON or |
| Battery | OFF ⇔ ⑤ |

Other Settings

| Start Here $\bigcirc \Rightarrow TV \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow User Settings \Rightarrow \bigcirc$ | |
|--|---|
| Check TV Settings | Check TV Settings |
| Reset Channel Settings | ⇒ Reset Channel Setting ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ ● ⇒ YES ⇒ ● |
| Clear Data Broadcast Memory | ⇒ Reset Storage Area ⇒ ● ⇒ Select an affiliated station ⇒ ⑥ ⇒ Delete This or Delete All ⇒ ● (⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ ●) ⇒ YES ⇒ ● |
| Reset TV Settings | ⇒ Reset TV Settings ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ ● ⇒ YES ⇒ ● |

Camera/Video Settings

| Set Shutter Sound | [Photo Viewfinder] (P. 7-5)/[Video Viewfinder] (P. 7-7) ⇔ ⑥ ⇔ Shutter Sound ⇔ ⑥ ⇔ Select a shutter sound ⇔ ⑥ |
|--|--|
| Set Interval for Continuous Shooting | [Continuous Shooting Viewfinder] (P. 7-9) ⇒ ③ ⇒ Interval/Number ⇒ ③ ⇒ Shot Interval ⇒ ⑥ ⇒ 0.5 Seconds, 1.0 Seconds or 2.0 Seconds ⇒ ⑥ • Shot Interval is available when CHG Cameramode (P. 7-5) is set to A-Continuous Mode. |
| Set Number of Shots for Continuous Shooting | [Continuous Shooting Viewfinder] (P. 7-9) ⇒ ③ ⇒ Interval/Number ⇒ ● ⇒ Shot Number ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter Shot Number ⇒ ● |

File Storage

| Set Storage Location for Still Images/Videos | [Photo Viewfinder] (P. 7-5)/[Video Viewfinder] (P. 7-7) ⇒ ⑥ ⇒ Select to Save ⇒ ⑨ ⇒ Phone or microSD ⇒ ⑨ ⇒ |
|--|---|
| | Select a folder |

Customization

When Running S! Appli

| | • |
|------------------------------|---|
| Set Sound Volume | $\Rightarrow \textit{Sound/Vib Settings} \Rightarrow \textcircled{\scriptsize 0} \Rightarrow \textit{Volume} \\ \Rightarrow \textcircled{\scriptsize 0} \Rightarrow \textcircled{\scriptsize 0} \text{ to adjust volume} \Rightarrow \textcircled{\scriptsize 0}$ |
| Set Vibration | ⇒ Sound/Vib Settings ⇒ ● ⇒ Vibration ⇒ ● ⇒ ON or OFF ⇒ ● |
| Set Backlight | ⇒ Backlight Settings ⇒ ● ⇒ Switch ON/OFF ⇒ ● ⇒ Always ON, Always OFF or Link To Phone Set. ⇒ ● |
| Set Blinking of Backlight | ⇒ Backlight Settings ⇒ ● ⇒ Blink ⇒ ● ⇒ ON or OFF ⇒ ● |

Start Here ● ⇒ S! Appli ⇒ ● ⇒ S! Appli List ⇒ ●

| Allow/Prohibit S! Appli to Connect to Network | ⇒ Select an S! Appli ⇒ ⊕ ⇒ Security Settings ⇒ ● ⇒ Net Access ⇒ ● ⇒ All Permit, Prompt at 1st only, Prompt each time or Disable ⇒ ● • Available with network-capable S! Appli. |
|--|--|
| Allow/Prohibit S! Appli to Write Personal Information | ⇒ Select an S! Appli ⇒ ⑥ ⇒ Security Settings ⇒ ⑥ ⇒ Write/Del User Data ⇒ ⑥ ⇒ All Permit, Prompt at 1st only, Prompt each time or Disable ⇒ ⑥ • Available with S! Appli that can write and delete user data. |

| Reset Security | ⇒ Select an S! Appli ⇒ 🌀 ⇒ Security |
|----------------|--|
| Settings of | Settings ⇒ ● ⇒ Reset Security Set. ⇒ ● ⇒ YES ⇒ ● |

S! Appli

Reset ⇒ ●

| | ⇒ Set to Default ⇒ ⊕ Enter Security Code ⇒ ⇒ YES ⊕ | | | | | |
|---------------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| Delete All S! Appli | ⇒ Delete All S! App ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ ● ⇒ YES ⇒ ● | | | | | |
| | Security Code ⇒ ● ⇒ YES ⇒ ● | | | | | |
| | Some S! Appli are not deleted. | | | | | |



S! Quick News

| Set Automatic Updates for S! Quick News | ⇒ Auto Refresh ⇒ ● ⇒ Select an item ⇒ ● ⇒ Select update interval, ON or OFF ⇒ ● (twice) |
|--|---|
| Hide S! Quick News in Standby | ⇒ Standby Settings ⇒ ● ⇒ Standby Disp. Set. ⇒ ● ⇒ OFF ⇒ ● (twice) |
| Set Ticker Speed | ⇒ Standby Settings ⇒ ● ⇒ Speed Settings ⇒ ● ⇒ Fast, Normal or Slow ⇒ ● (twice) |
| Set Information to Appear in S! Quick News | ⇒ Standby Settings ⇒ ● ⇒ Unread & Read Set. ⇒ ● ⇒ Unread Only or Unread & Read ⇒ ● (twice) |
| Hide S! Quick News Images | ⇒ Set Image Disp. ⇒ ● ⇒ OFF ⇒ ● (twice) |
| Reset S! Quick News Registered Contents | ⇒ Del. Quick News ⊕ ⊕ YES ⊕ (twice) ⊕ Enter Security Code ⊕ (three times) |

S! Info Channel

Ch./Weather ⇒ ● ⇒ Settings ⇒ ●

| Set Whether to Display Desktop Icon For New Received Information | \Rightarrow S! Information Notif. \Rightarrow $\textcircled{@}$ \Rightarrow ON or OFF \Rightarrow $\textcircled{@}$ |
|--|---|
| Set Font Size for Web Pages | ⇒ Font Size ⇒ ● ⇒ Select font size ⇒ ● |

Weather Indicators

Set Whether to ⇒ Weather Update ⇒ ● ⇒ ON or OFF Automatically **Update Weather** Information ⇒ Standby Setting ⇒ • ON or OFF ⇒ Set Whether to **Display Weather** • Indicators in Standby Set Whether to ⇒ Weather Notif. ⇒ • ON or OFF ⇒ **Display Desktop** \odot Icon For New Received Information



Text Entry

⇒ Character Input Set ⇒ ●

| Set Text Input Method | ⇒ Input Mode ⇒ ● ⇒ Select an input method ⇒ ● |
|---|--|
| Set Word Prediction | \Rightarrow Prediction \Rightarrow © \Rightarrow ON or OFF \Rightarrow © |
| Set to Show T9 Suggestion Words in Kanji or Hiragana | ⇒ T9 Change Mode ⇒ ● ⇒ T9 Kanji Change Mode or T9 Kana Change Mode ⇒ ● |
| Clear Learning History | ⇒ Clear Learned ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ ● ⇒ T9/Expect Words/Pic. or Kana/Kanji Change/Face ⇒ ● |
| Change Font Size | ⇒ CHG Input Size ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a size ⇒ ● |
| Set Auto Cursor Movement in 5-Touch Mode | ⇒ Auto Cursor ⇒ ● ⇒ Fast, Normal, Slow or OFF ⇒ ● |

Shortcut Key

 Settings
 Other Settings
 Oth **Change Function** Assigned to **Shortcut Key** Select a function ⇒ ● **YES** ⇒ ● · Alternatively, press and hold (9) in Standby to access Shortcut-key Setting window. • To return to original settings, press (a), select Reset Shortcut-key, and press .

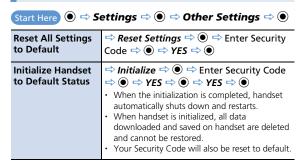
Closed Illumination

Closed Illum. ⇒ • ON ⇒ •

| for Handset Close | ⇒ Set Illumination → ● → Select a color |
|--|--|
| Set Flashing Pattern for Handset Close | ⇒ Set Pattern ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a pattern ● |



Resetting Handset



Appendix



| Multitask Combinations | 15-2 |
|----------------------------------|---------|
| Software Update | |
| Updating Software | 15-4 |
| Troubleshooting | 15-6 |
| Text Entry Key Assignments | 15-10 |
| In 5-touch Mode | 15-10 |
| In 2-touch Mode | 15-11 |
| In T9 Input Mode | 15-12 |
| Kuten Code List | 15-13 |
| Weather Indicators | 15-19 |
| Menu List | 15-20 |
| Specifications | 15-34 |
| Main Specifications | 15-34 |
| Handset Materials | 15-35 |
| Maximum Number of Storable Items | 15-36 |
| Memory Card Folders & Files | 15-37 |
| Index | 15-39 |
| Warranty & After Sales Service | 15-50 |
| Warranty | 15-50 |
| After Sales Service | |
| Customer Service | . 15-51 |





Multitask Combinations

The following table shows combinations of functions that can be used simultaneously to multitask.

• The following indications may not apply depending on the function status and combination.

| Function Currently Active Function | | Mail | Yahoo! | S! A | ppli | Settings | Data | Tools | Phone Book | Own Data | Camera | TV | Music | | |
|------------------------------------|------------|------|------------|------|--------|----------|--------|-------|---------------|-------------|--------|----------|-------|------------------|-------------------|
| | | | | | Active | | Folder | | DOOK | Data | | | | Original Menu | Group |
| | | | Y / | Ø | 2 | B | | ₽. | 9 | 0 | | <u>~</u> | S | | |
| Mail | K | × | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | Mail Group |
| Yahoo! | Y / | 0 | × | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | Yahoo! Group |
| S! Appli | 3 | 0 | 0 | × | × | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | S! Appli Group |
| Settings | S | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | × | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | Settings Group |
| Data Folder | | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | × | × | × | × | × | 0 | 0 | 0 | Data Folder |
| Tools | () | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | × | × | × | × | × | 0 | 0 | 0 | |
| Phone Book | 8 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | × | × | × | × | × | 0 | 0 | 0 | Tools Group |
| Own Data | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | × | × | × | × | × | 0 | 0 | 0 | 10013 G10up |
| Camera | | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | × | × | × | × | × | 0 | 0 | 0 | |

| Multitask | Combinations | 4 |
|-----------|--------------|---|
| | | |

| Function Currently Active Function | | Mail | Yahoo! | S! A | Active | Settings | Data Folder | Tools | Phone Book | Own Data | Camera | TV | Music | Original Menu | Group | |
|------------------------------------|------------------|------------|----------|------|--------|----------|----------------|-------|---------------|-------------|--------|----------|-------|------------------|-------|------------------------|
| | | | <u>v</u> | e | 3 | 2 | ۵ | ₹. | Ψ | Q | ₽ | <u>~</u> | n | Wenu | | |
| TV | | <u></u> | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | × | × | 0 | |
| | TV Active | | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | × | × | × | 0 | TV & Music |
| Musi | ic | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | × | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | × | × | 0 | Group |
| | Player Active | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | × | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | × | × | × | 0 | |
| Durir Voice | ng a e Call | | 0 | 0 | × | × | × | × | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | × | × | 0 | Voice Call |
| Durir Vide | ng a o Call | | × | × | × | × | × | × | × | × | × | × | × | × | × | Video Call |
| | | 7 2 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | × | × | 0 | External Connection |

O Available

× Not Available

15

Software Update

Check if software on handset needs to be updated, and update it through the network if necessary.

- Before updating software, turn off handset and restart it to make sure that all handset functions have ended
- Disconnect the USB cable from handset. The software update, if it is done with the USB cable connected, may not be properly completed.
- No transmission fees apply to check or update software.
- Updating software may take 30 minutes or so. Wait for the software update to finish before using handset.
- Make sure battery is sufficiently charged before updating software.
- Update software in a location of good signal reception. Do not change locations while updating software.
- Other handset functions are available once the software update is completed.
- Data saved on handset is retained when you update software. However, data may be lost depending on the handset condition (e.g. a malfunction). We recommend that you make backups of important data (though it may be impossible to back up some downloaded data) before updating software. SoftBank is not liable for any data loss.

- Never remove battery or USIM Card or turn off handset while updating software.
- If software update fails, handset may become inoperable. If this happens, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, Customer Assistance (P. 15-51).

Updating Software

- Settings ⇒ ● ⇒ Software Update ⇒ •
- Software Update ⇒ ●

Software Undate le recommend that you stay in a place with a good reception while executing Software Update, Sending/ receiving call/mail is not available during update. Continue?

Follow onscreen instructions

After Software is Updated

After update, handset restarts and update status appears.



Update Status

Note

 If handset does not restart after updating, remove and reinsert Battery, and turn handset on again. If handset still does not restart, call SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, Customer Assistance (P. 15-51).



Checking Update Results

- Settings ⇒ ● ⇒ Software Update ⇒ •
- 2 Update Result ⇒ ●

Changing Update Schedule

Notification appears for scheduled updates. Follow onscreen instructions to change update schedule. Once schedule is changed, notification appears at the set time. Press to start update. If handset is left untouched, update starts automatically.

Note

• End all functions to open notification. Software update is canceled if you continue using functions for over ten minutes after the scheduled time.

Tip

· Alternatively, to change update time: ● ⇒ Settings ⇒ ● ⇒ Other Settings ⇒ Software Update
 Regular *Updates* ⇒ ● Follow onscreen instructions



Troubleshooting

| Problem | Possible Cause & Remedy | Refer to |
|--|---|---------------------|
| Cannot turn on | Is battery properly installed? | P. 1-13 |
| handset. | Is battery exhausted? | P. 1-21 |
| Handset is slow to turn on. | It takes time if there are large amounts of data (e.g., Phone Book entries) saved on handset. | 1 |
| Cannot charge | Is battery properly installed? | P. 1-13 |
| battery. Charging Indicator does not light up. | Is AC Charger plugged into an outlet properly? | P. 1-15 |
| | Is the connector of AC Charger correctly inserted into handset? | |
| | Is AC Charger the specified ZTDAA1? Battery may not charge properly with non-specified charger. | |
| Battery drains too fast. | Battery service life may be over. Battery lifespan may be shortened by environmental factors. | P. 1-13, P. 14-5 |
| | Battery operation time will vary depending on handset operations or settings. | |
| Cannot make calls. | Is handset out of service area or in a location with a weak signal? | - |
| | Is a maximum call cost limit set? | P. 14-14 |

| Problem | Possible Cause & Remedy | Refer to |
|---|--|----------|
| Cannot make calls | Is Keypad Lock active? | P. 4-4 |
| using Keypad. | Is <i>Dial/Sending Mail</i> specified to be locked in Original (Dial) Lock mode? | P. 4-3 |
| | Is Restrict Dialing set? | P. 2-22 |
| A message informs you the number is not in service. | Did you include the area code when dialing a phone number? | - |
| Busy tone always sounds for outgoing call. | Does Network is busy at this moment Please try again later appear in Display? | - |
| Network is busy at this moment Please try again later appears. | Voice call/packet transmission network may be experiencing heavy traffic or technical difficulties. Try again later. Emergency calls (110, 119 and 118) are still available. | - |
| Cannot receive | Is handset in <i>Emission OFF Mode</i> ? | P. 4-5 |
| Calls. Incoming ringtone | Is handset in Manner Mode? | P. 1-19 |
| does not sound. | Is Ring Volume set to Silent? | P. 14-8 |

Troubleshooting



| Problem | Possible Cause & Remedy | Refer to |
|--|--|-------------------|
| The other party's voice is difficult to | Is the earpiece properly placed against your ear? | - |
| hear. | Is anything obstructing the speaker if it is in handsfree mode? | 1 |
| | Is the earpiece volume properly adjusted? | P. 3-3, P. 3-8 |
| The other party's voice is too loud. | Is the earpiece volume properly adjusted? | P. 3-3, P. 3-8 |
| Handset response to key presses is slow. | This may occur when there are large amounts of data saved on handset, or when large amounts of data are being transferred between handset and memory card. | - |
| Cannot hear key | Is Keypad Sound set to OFF ? | P. 14-10 |
| operation tones. | Is handset in Manner Mode? | P. 1-19 |
| Side Key is | Is Keypad Lock active? | P. 4-4 |
| inoperable when handset is closed. | Is Side Key Guard set to ON? | P. 1-22 |

| Problem | Possible Cause & Remedy | Refer to |
|--|--|----------|
| Display is blank. | Is Power Saver Mode activated? | P. 14-5 |
| | If handset is left in a very hot place, it may automatically shut down. If this happens, move handset to a location at an appropriate temperature (5 to 35 °C) and wait for a while until the keys become operable again. | - |
| Display is hard to see. | Is <i>Brightness</i> under <i>Backlight</i> set to lower level? | P. 14-5 |
| | Is ECO Mode activated? | P. 1-22 |
| | Is Privacy Angle set to ON ? | P. 14-5 |
| Display backlight does not | Is <i>Lighting</i> under <i>Backlight</i> set to <i>OFF</i> ? | P. 14-5 |
| illuminate. | Is ECO Mode activated? | P. 1-22 |
| Display backlight is sometimes bright, sometimes dim. | Is Brightness under Backlight set to ON? Light Sensor detects the surrounding brightness and automatically adjusts the Display Backlight brightness. | P. 14-5 |
| Nothing appears in Sub-display. | Is Sub-display Setting set to OFF ? | P. 14-8 |

Troubleshooting

| Problem | Possible Cause & Remedy | Refer to |
|---|---|-------------------|
| Message appears when opening an image, video or song file. | The image, video or song is unavailable with the function being used when any of the following messages appear. Not available and No preview data | - |
| x appears instead of an image or preview. | The image file may be corrupted. | - |
| Images shot with handset camera flicker. | When shooting images indoors, flicker may occur due to fluorescent lighting, etc. Changing the <i>Flicker</i> setting may help reduce flicker. | P. 7-12 |
| Images/videos shot on handset are too bright. | Were the still images or videos shot with <i>Flicker</i> not set to <i>Auto</i> ? Set <i>Flicker</i> to <i>Auto</i> . | P. 7-12 |
| Images/videos shot on handset are blurred. | Select a Photo Mode suited to the subject or scene. | P. 7-5, P. 7-7 |
| Cannot watch TV. | Is handset out of the digital terrestrial broadcast service area or in a location with a weak signal? | - |
| | Are the channel settings done? | P. 8-3 |
| Cannot use S! Appli. | Has different USIM Card been inserted? S! Appli becomes unavailable after inserting a different USIM Card. Initialize handset and download S! Appli again. | P. 9-7 |

| Problem | Possible Cause & Remedy | Refer to |
|--|--|----------|
| Insert USIM appears. | USIM Card is not properly inserted or may be damaged. | P. 1-12 |
| Insert microSD appears. | Memory card is not properly inserted or may be damaged. | P. 12-10 |
| Replace with A New One or check the Disk appears. | Perform a scan disk on memory card. | P. 12-17 |
| Function Cannot Operate Any More appears. | End one of the currently active functions to continue operation. | - |
| Other function active Cannot start appears. | These messages appear when you try to use an unavailable function when another function is active. | - |
| Other function active Cannot operate appears. | | |
| Memory shortage appears. | This message appears when operation is interrupted due to insufficient memory. Reboot handset. | - |
| Connection failed appears. | Is handset in a location where signal is weak? | - |
| | The page you are trying to access is very busy. Try again after a while. | - |

| Problem | Possible Cause & Remedy | Refer to |
|----------|--|----------|
| appears. | Inserted memory card may be defective. | P. 12-17 |



Text Entry Key Assignments

In 5-touch Mode

| Key | Kanji/hiragana Entry Mode | Katakana Entry Mode | Alphanumeric Entry Mode | Number Entry Mode |
|-----|----------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|-------------------|
| | あいうえおぁぃぅぇぉ | アイウエオァィゥェォ 1 | . / @ - : ⁻¹ _1 | 1 |
| 2 | かきくけこ | カキクケコ2 | abcABC2 | 2 |
| 3 | さしすせそ | サシスセソ3 | defDEF3 | 3 |
| 4 | たちつてとっ | タチツテトッ 4 | ghiGHI4 | 4 |
| 5 | なにぬねの | ナニヌネノ5 | jkIJKL5 | 5 |
| 6 | はひふへほ | ハヒフへホ6 | mnoMNO6 | 6 |
| 7 | まみむめも | マミムメモ7 | pqrsPQRS7 | 7 |
| 8 | やゆよゃゅょ | ヤユヨャュョ8 | tuvTUV8 | 8 |
| 9 | らりるれろ | ラリルレロ9 | wxyzWXYZ9 | 9 |
| 0 | わをんーゎ | ワヲンーヮ ² 0 | 0 | 0+3 |
| * | · · 456 | · · 456 | 4 5 | * |
| # | 、。?!·(space) ⁷⁸ | 、。?!·(space) ^{7 8} | , . ? ! ' - & () ¥ (space) | # |

- 1 Appears as " \sim " during double-byte entry.
- 2 The lower case of "ワ" can be entered in double-byte mode.
- 3 Press and hold o to enter "+."
- 4 Can be toggled between upper case and lower case.
- 5 * to insert line feed " 』."
- 6 Before confirming characters, press ⊚ to display "_," and press again in this state to enter "* " or "* ."
- 7 Cannot be entered when entering readings in Own Dictionary.
- 8 Only space can be entered when entering readings in USIM Phone Book.

In 2-touch Mode

In Double-byte Mode

| Ke | y | Pre | ess l | Vex | t | | | | | | | | |
|-------------|---|-----|-------|-----|---|---|---|----|---|------------|---|--|--|
| | | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 0 | | |
| Pre | 1 | あ | い | う | え | お | Α | В | С | D | Е | | |
| SSE | | あ | い | う | え | お | а | b | С | d | е | | |
| Press First | 2 | か | き | < | け | Z | F | G | Н | 1 | J | | |
| st | | | | | | | f | g | h | i | j | | |
| | 3 | さ | し | す | せ | そ | Κ | L | М | Ν | 0 | | |
| | | | | | | | k | 1 | m | n | 0 | | |
| | 4 | た | ち | つ | て | ۲ | Р | Q | R | S | Т | | |
| | | | | つ | | | р | q | r | S | t | | |
| | 5 | な | に | ぬ | ね | の | U | V | W | Χ | Υ | | |
| | | | | | | | u | ٧ | W | Х | У | | |
| | 6 | は | ひ | 131 | ^ | ほ | Z | ? | ļ | _ | / | | |
| | | | | | | | Z | | | | | | |
| | 7 | ま | み | む | め | も | ¥ | .3 | | a | | | |
| | 8 | ゃ | (| ゆ |) | よ | * | # | | 9 1 | 2 | | |
| | | ゃ | | ゆ | | ょ | | | | Ť | | | |
| | 9 | 5 | b | る | れ | ろ | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | 0 | わ | を | h | 3 | 3 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 0 | | |
| | | わ | | | | 0 | | | | | | | |

In Single-byte Mode

| Ke | у | Pre | ess l | Vex | t | | | | | | |
|-------------|---|-----|-------|-----|---|---|--------|--------|--------|---------------------|----------|
| | | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 0 |
| Pro | 1 | 7 | 1 | ゥ | Ι | 才 | Α | В | С | D | Е |
| SSe | | 7 | 1 | ゥ | I | オ | а | b | С | d | е |
| Press First | 2 | ħ | + | ク | ٢ | | F | G | Н | | J |
| st | | | | | | | f | g | h | i | j |
| | 3 | Ħ | ý | ス | t | y | K | L | М | N | 0 |
| | | | | | | | k | | m | n | 0 |
| | 4 | 9 | Ŧ | ŋ | 쿳 | 1 | Р | Q | R | S | T |
| | | | | ッ | | | р | q | r | S | t |
| | 5 | ナ | _ | ヌ | 礻 | 1 | U | V | W | Х | Υ |
| | | | | | | | U | ٧ | W | Х | у |
| | 6 | Л | Ł | フ | Λ | ホ | Z | ? | ļ | - | / |
| | | | | | | | Z | | | | |
| | 7 | ₹ | 111 | Ь | Х | ŧ | ¥ | .8 | | a | |
| | 8 | ħ | (| 1 |) | 3 | * | # | | № | 2 |
| | | Þ | | ı | | 3 | | | | | |
| | 9 | Ē | IJ | Ιlν | ν | | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
| | | @ | / | - | _ | : | .ne.jp | .co.jp | .ac.jp | @softbank. ne.jp | |
| | 0 | 7 | Ŧ | ソ | * | ۰ | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 0 |
| | | ~ | ' | | , | | www. | .com | .html | http:// | https:// |

- · When using double-byte mode to enter reading in USIM Phone Book, double-byte katakana are entered instead of hiragana.
- Press 🛪 after entering a character to switch upper and lower case.
- 1 Can be entered when entering pictographs is possible, such as in Text Memo and Common Phrases.
- 2 Press **8 0** to toggle between upper-case and lower-case modes.
- 3 After characters that cannot have "" " or "" ." a separate "" " or "° " is entered. Before confirming characters, press to display "_," and press again in this state to enter "" or "" ."
- : A space is entered for these key combinations.





Text Entry Key Assignments

In T9 Input Mode

| Key | Kanji/hiragana Entry Mode | Katakana Entry Mode | Alphanumeric Entry Mode |
|-----|------------------------------|---------------------------|---|
| 1 | Rowあ, 1 | Rowア, 1 | ./@?!(),:' ⁻⁵ & ¥ 1 Single-byte space |
| 2 | Rowか, 2 | Row力, 2 | abcABC2 |
| 3 | Rowさ,3 | Rowサ, 3 | defDEF3 |
| 4 | Rowた, 4 | Row夕,4 | ghiGHI4 |
| 5 | Rowな, 5 | Rowナ, 5 | jklJKL5 |
| 6 | Rowは,6 | Rowハ, 6 | mnoMNO6 |
| 7 | Rowま, 7 | Row₹,7 | pqrsPQRS7 |
| 8 | Rowや, 8 | Rowヤ,8 | tuvTUV8 |
| 9 | Rowら, 9 | Rowラ, 9 | wxyzWXYZ9 |
| 0 | わをん ゎー、 0 | ワヲン ヮ ⁴ ー、0 | 0 |
| * | 1 2 | 1 2 | 2 6 |
| # | 3 | 3 | |

- For key assignments in number entry mode, see the table in "In 5-touch Mode."
- Numbers do not appear when entering reading in USIM Phone Book or Own Dictionary.
- Press # to toggle the case as follows: Caps-lock cancel mode → Shift mode → Caps Lock mode
- Caps Lock mode: All characters are entered in upper case.

Shift mode: The first characters of words are capitalized and the rest of characters are entered in lower case.

Caps-lock cancel mode: All characters are entered in lower case.

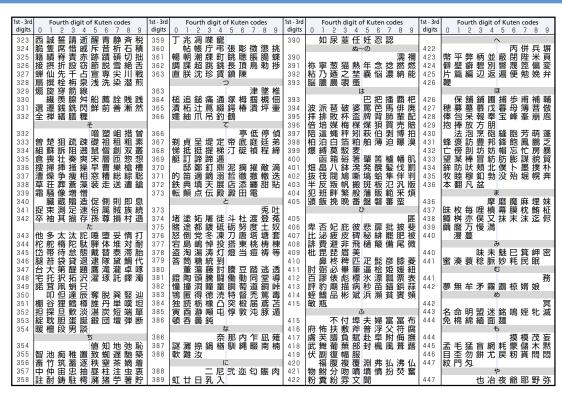
- Once characters entered in Shift mode have been determined, the mode is switched to Caps-lock cancel mode.
- 1 When editing a reading, pressing * adds/cancels ** " or " *."
- 2 * to insert line feed " ..."
- 4 The lower case of "ワ" can only be entered in double-byte mode.
- 5 " " is entered in double-byte mode.
- 6 Pressing before confirming characters enters a space before confirming.



•Actual Display font may differ in appearance from the following.

| 1st - 3rd | | г. | | alt a | | : IZ | 4 | | 1 | | 1st - 3rd | | г. | | . alta | | £ 17. | | | | | 1st - 3rd | | Г- | | alt a | : a - 4 | . 17 | | | | 1st - 3re | a l | F. | | 11 | :£ | IZt. | | d |
|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|----------|------------|---------------|-------------------|--------|-----------------|-------------|-----------|-------------------|----|----------|--------|-------|-----------|-----------|----------|----|------------|------------|----------|--------|-------------|----------|---------|--------|----------------|--------------|-------------------|-----------|----------|------------|------------|------------|---------|-------------|------|------------|
| digits | n | 1 | urtr 2 | dig 3 | 1t 01 | 5 | ten 6 | 7 | les Ω | 9 | digits | n | 1 | urti | J GIG | IIT O | 1 Ku 5 | iten 6 | coa 7 | | 9 | digits | 0 | 1 | urth 2 | aig 3 | 1t 01 | 5 | fen 6 | 7 | es 89 | digits | | 1 | ourti 2 | n aig 3 | | Kute 5 6 | n co | aes 8 9 |
| 010 | U | (24.2) | | J | 4 | Ü | U | · | | 2 | 037 | 4 | _ | <u>د</u> | : | : | - | - | _ | | - | | - | - | _ | - | ÷ | _ | _ | _ | | _ | 1 | _ | Ú | J | 4 | 0 0 | | 0 3 |
| 010 | | (74-7) | .` | ò | ! | : | • | ÷ | , | (| 037 | ו | g | 11 | 1 | t | k | | | n | | 064 065 | θ | l T | | | | | | U | πρ | 139 | | 11 | U | | あ | | | |
| 011 | | | ٧, | ,, | 수 | Þ | ~ | \cap | = | _` | 039 | p z | Ч | 1 | S | ı | u | ٧ | W | Х | УΙ | 000 | σ | L | U | Φ | х | ψ | ω | | | 160 | | 亜 | næs | 娃 | | ÷ æ | 挨 | 姶 逢 |
| 012 | ` | 1 | ` | ~ | Ŧ | ĭ | <i>.</i> | | - | , | 040 | 2 | あ | あ | U | L) | う | う | え | え | <u>+</u> √ | 070 | | ٨ | Б | В | ы | п | Е | Ë | жз | | 葵 | | 穐 | 悪 | 阿克握 | 衰 愛屋 旭 | | 芦 |
| 014 | " | " | ì | ١ | ľ | { | г | 1 | 1 | ı | 041 | お | | | | ぎぎ | ζ | | | ĵ, | ぉ | 071 | Ιи | Й | 2 | | | | ō | | PC | 162 | 梓 | 쁜 | 門公 | 扱 | 宛 如 | 温虹 | 話 | 1 綾 |
| 015 | 1 | \ | 1 | 1 | ì | 1 | ŀ | 1 | Ì | 'n | 041 | 25 | 7. | がざ | ı. | | | | | | 칟 | 072 | 岸 | V | Ф | | | | | | ЪБ | | イナ 名上 | 法 | 斡粟 | 松 | 安尼 | 苗 拓 | 語 | 製料 |
| 016 | + | _ | ± | × | ÷ | | ± | ~ | >, | ≦ | 043 | ぞ | た | だだ | 5 | ぢ | | | ゔ | | 듣ㅣ | 073 | Ь | Ċ | ю | | ч | -1 | ш | щ | ט ט | 164 | 鮎鞍 | 松 | * | тш . | × 1 | אנ פּיי | чн | 木间 |
| 017 | ≥ | ∞ | Ξ. | ð | 후 | 0 | | "` | Ĉ | ¥ | 044 | غ | تر | な | Ē | | | | | | ぱし | 074 | ٦ | 0 | 10 | • • | | | | | а | | +X | н | | | W | | | |
| 018 | \$ | ¢ | £ | | | 2 | * | @ | | Š | 045 | $\ddot{\upsilon}$ | び | 73° | 131 | | | | | ペ | | 075 | б | В | г | Д | е | ë | ж | 3 | ий | | | | IJ | 伊· | 位化 | 衣 債 | 囲 | 夷 委 |
| 019 | * | Ò | ē | 0 | \Diamond | _ | | _ | ٠ | ^ | 046 | | ıŝ | ⇟ | | | | ŧ | | | ф | 076 | ĺκ | _ | | | | | | c | T y | 165 | 威 | 尉 | 催 | 讀. | 慰 | 易格 | 為 | 夷 畏 遺 溢 |
| 020 | ^` | ĕ | Ň. | Ĭ | Ă | ▲ | ∇ | ▼ | * | ₹ | 047 | ф | ょ | £ | | | | | | b: | | 077 | db | | | ч | | ш | | | ь 3 | 166 | 移 | 尉維 | 緯 | 意胃 | 萎 | 花 謂 | 違 | 遺医 |
| 021 | - | ÷ | † | Ţ | = | | | | | | 048 | あ | ゑ | を | | - | - | | _ | | . | 078 | ю | Я | • | | | • | | | | 167 | 拼 | 亥 | 域 | 育 | 萎郁 | 易衣機一 | - 壱 | 溢逸 |
| 022 | | | | | | | ∈ | ∋ | \subseteq | \supseteq | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | 168 | 并稲 | 茨 | 芉 | 鰯 | 允 E | 印服 | 違壱員 | 因 姻 |
| 023 | \subset | \supset | U | \cap | | | | | | | 050 | | ア | ア | 1 | | | | | I. | ォー | 080 | | _ | | Г | ٦ŀ | ┙ | L | - | $_{	op}$ $_{	op}$ | 169 | 힁 | 飲 | 淫 | 胤 | 蔭 | | | |
| 024 | | | Λ | V | \neg | \Rightarrow | \Leftrightarrow | A | 3 | | 051 | オ | カ | ガ | | | | | | ゲ | ⊐ I | 081 | 1 | + | _ | 1 | г. | ٦. | _ | L | ⊦᠇ | 170 | | 院 | 陰 | 隠 | 韻口 | 吋 | | |
| | | | _ | | | | | | | _ | 052 | ゴ | サ | | | ジ | | | | ゼ | ソー | 082 | H | ㅗ | + | H | ┯ | + | Ψ. | + | \vdash \neg | - | | | | | う | | | |
| 026 | Ζ | Τ | | | | = | ≒ | « | >> | √ | 053 | ゾ | タ | ダ | チ | - | - | ツ | ヅ | テ | デー | 083 | - | _ | + | | | | | | | 170 | 1 | _ | | | | _ 左 | 宇 | 烏羽 |
| | S | ∞ | : | J | Ϊ | | | | | _ | 054 | Ļ | ド | ナ. | Ξ | 콧 | 초 | ノ | Λ, | バ. | <u> </u> | | | _ | _ | _ | | _ | _ | _ | | 171 | 注 | 雨 | 卯蔚 | 鵜鰻 | 親 | 丑強 | 白瓜 | 渦嘘 |
| 028 | | | Ā | ‰ | # | b | Þ | † | # | ٦ | 055 | ヒ | Ľ | 드 | フ | ァ | フ | | \sim | | ホ | 130 | | ① | | | | | | <u>(7)</u> (| 8 9 | | 児 | 爵 | 慰 | 鰻 | 姥ル | 既浦 | Ш | 閏 噂 |
| 029 | | | | | \cup | | | | | | 056 | ボ | ポ | 곡 | ₹ | 4 | × | | | | 크ㅣ | 131 | | | | | 14 | 15 | 16 | 17) | 18 (9 | | 云 | 連 | 雲 | | | | | |
| 031 | | | | | | | ^ | , | 0 | 2 | 057 | 그 | 3 | ヨヲ | ラン | リヴ | ル | _ | | ヮ゚ | 기 | 132 | 20 X | 1 | Π | Ш | IV 같 | ν * | VI | VII. | VIII D | | | | | # . | えゅ | 57 24 | . 88 | 94 nm |
| 031 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 0 | 0 | U | 1 | 2 | 3 | 058 | + | ヱ | フ | 7 | ソ | カ | σ | | | | 133 | I X | | IJ | ь. | ずむ | | グラ ム ミリ・ | | 고 기 기 | 173 | I_ | 244 | 3, | 荏 | 餌 洩 | 钗 営 | 妥品 | 影映類英 |
| 032 | 4 | υ | U | ^ | 8 B | 9 C | D | Ε | F | G | 060 | | ٨ | В | г | ٨ | Е | Z | Н | Θ | ı١ | 134 | | | íj≌ kg i | ル | | セント | F.J. | υI | nm cn | 174 | 曳衛 | 栄詠 | 永鋭 | 液 | 没在 | 製英基 | 嬰穎悦 | 親 越 |
| 034 | Н | 1 | 1 | K | 7 | M | Ŋ | _ | P | Ö | 061 | К | Α. | М | Ņ | ≟ | | | | Σ | ÷Ι | 136 | MII | IIIB | | 平成 | " | | Nο | VV . | IL (£ | | 閲 | 砂 榎 | 脈 | | 反 1 園 1 | 正写在 | 一 | 超级 |
| | R | s | Ť | ü | V | W | Y | V | 7 | w | 062 | | Φ | | | ā | U | 1.1 | | _ | ۱ ۱ | 137 | (| ⅌ | Æ (| TM 看) | | | | | 证明 | | 掩 | 接援 | 沿 | 温 | 型 5 | 医性性 | 宴燕 | 延線線 |
| 036 | רו | 3 | 1 | U | ٧ | a | ĥ | C | d | е | 063 | ' | Ψ | ^ | α | | ν | δ | ε | 7 | $_n$ | 138 | l₩ | ₩ | ľ | ę U | Σ | (H) | u V | . מתי | ᇿᄳ | 1 178 | 艶 | 遊苑 | 當 | 演遠 | 鉛質 | 泊煙 塩 | 788 | DER POR |
| 300 | | | | | | u | b | U | u | U | 500 | _ | | | ч | μ | 1 | | _ | 7 | ' | 100 | _ | _ | J | , | - | ٧ | <u> </u> | _ | | 1170 | ¤c | 76 | 22 | <u>~</u> | EH 1 | me 7⊞ | 1 | |

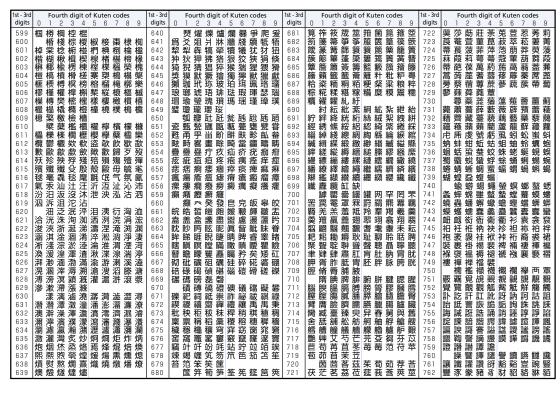
| t - 3rd | | 1st - 3rd | Fourth digit of Kuten codes | 1st - 3rd | |
|---------------------------------|--|---|--|---|---|
| digits | | digits | 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 | digits | |
| 178 179 180 181 182 | お | 214 215 216 217 218 219 | 吉客宫究巨禦 性形成 医外侧 医胸骨骨 医胸骨骨 医胸骨骨 医胸骨骨 医胸骨骨 医胸骨骨 医胸骨骨 医胸骨 | 249 250 251 252 253 254 | 0 |
| 82 83 84 85 | かしている。 かいのでは、これでは、これでは、これでは、これでは、これでは、これでは、これでは、これ | 220 221 222 223 224 225 226 | 究巨禦 卿挟蕎業巾芹第丘線 医热头 医治 医热 医克姆斯氏 经股份 医克格曼 医克格曼 医克格曼 医克格曼 医克格曼 医克格曼 医克格曼 医克格曼 | 255 256 257 258 259 260 261 | 9 忽惚骨狛込 0 此頃今困坤墾婚恨懇 297 醇順処初蔣署曙紅庶 3 55見相細児疽紺島廸 298 稟粛蒙華諸助 |
| 195 | 介恢 蟹慨馨拡赫 医性肾 经票额名 医乳球 医乳球 医乳球性 医乳球性 医克勒克斯氏 医克勒氏 医克勒氏 医克勒氏 医克勒氏 医克勒氏 医克勒氏 医克勒氏 医克勒 | 226 227 228 229 230 231 232 | 大 | 261 262 263 264 265 266 267 | 2 佐 叉 唆 嵯 左 差 査 沙 瑳 砂 301 妾 県 宵 将小 少 尚 月 島 |
| 198 199 200 201 202 | 噛 鴨 栢 茅 萱 | 232 233 234 235 236 237 | 生携繋鶏傑侯建 肩鹸絃 於 医憩経軽隙月堅 絹顕玄 於 医 | 268 269 270 271 272 273 | 8 世代作作 明価 作 東 系 |
| 205 | 制幹款竿諫舘鷹 粥勧惠歓管貫丸雁 別替感汗簡還含頑 別養感汗簡還含頑 類實性養緩鑑岸顏 一種 發生實力服 一種 一種 一種 一種 一種 一種 一種 一種 一種 一種 一種 一種 一種 | 238 239 240 241 242 243 | 传建 有數數 | 273 274 275 276 277 278 | 5 子屍市師志思指支孜斯 6 施旨枝上死氏獨和私糸。315 7 紙紫胺脂至視詞詩試誌 316 須酢図厨逗吹垂帥推 |
| 210 | 基族 人名 医克里姆氏 医克里姆克斯氏 医克里姆氏 医克里姆氏氏管皮肤 医克里姆氏原生 医克里姆氏 医克里姆氏 医克里姆克姆氏 医克里姆氏氏管皮肤 医克里姆氏氏管皮肤 医克里姆氏征氏管皮肤 医克里姆氏征氏管皮肤 医克里姆氏氏管皮肤 医克里姆氏原生 医克里姆氏氏管皮肤 医克里姆氏氏管皮肤 医克里姆氏氏管皮肤 医克里姆氏氏管皮肤 医克里姆氏氏管皮肤 医克里姆氏氏管皮肤 医克里姆克姆氏原生性原生原生性原生原生性原生原生原生原生原生原生原生原生原生原生原生原生原生 | 243 244 245 246 | 之 一 一 一 一 一 一 一 一 一 一 一 一 一 一 一 一 一 一 一 | 279 280 281 282 283 | 字 |
| 212 213 | 鬼亀偽儀妓宜戯技擬欺犠疑祇義蟻誼議掬菊鞠 | 247 248 | 御悟梧檎瑚碁語誤護醐乞鯉交佼侯候母光公功 | 284 285 | |



| • | ਰ |
|---|----------|
| • | ਰ |
| | ው |
| | 3 |
| | ₽ |
| | ₹ |
| | _ |
| A | |
| | 15 |
| | |

| | Fourth digit of Kuten codes | | | | | |
|-------|---|-----------|--|-----------|---|---|
| | | 1st - 3rd | | 1st - 3rd | | 1st - 3rd Fourth digit of Kuten codes |
| | 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 | digits | 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 | digits | 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 | digits 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 |
| 448 | 矢 厄 役 約 薬 訳 躍 靖 柳 薮 | 476 | | 517 | 嚀嚊嚠嚔嚏嚥嚮嚶嚴囂 | 558 協恆恍恣恃恤恂恬恫恙 559 悁悍惧悃悚 560 工能俊悖悗悒悧悋惡悸 |
| 449 € | 鑓 | 477 | | 518 | 嚼 囁 囃 囀 囈 囎 囑 囓 口 囮 | 559 悄 悍 惧 悃 悚 |
| | ø | 478 | | 519 | 囹 圐 囿 圄 圉 | 559 |
| 449 | 愉 愈 油 癒 | 479 | | 520 | 圏 國 園 園 團 圖 嗇 圜 圦 | 561 惠 惓 悴 忰 悽 惆 悵 惘 慍 愕 |
| 450 | 愉 愈 油 癒 諭 輸 唯 佑 優 勇 友 宥 幽 | 480 | 1 | 521 | 坏 址 坎 圻 址 坏 坩 埀 垈 坡 | 562 愆惶惷愀惴惺愃惚惻惱 |
| 451 1 | 諭 輸 唯 佑 優 勇 友 宥 幽 悠 憂 揖 有 柚 湧 涌 猶 猷 由 | 481 | 弐 丐 丕 个 丱 丶 丼 丿 乂 乖 乘 亂 亅 豫 亊 舒 弐 于 亞 | 522 | 四國國國國國國國國國國國國國國國國國國國國國國國國國國國國國國國國國國國國國 | 561 惠惓悴忰悽惆悵惘慍愕 562 愆惶惷愀惴惺愃惚惻惱 563 愍愎慇愾愨愧慊愿愼愬 |
| 452 7 | 愉愈油癒 諭輸唯佑優勇友宥幽 悠憂揖有柚湧涌猶猷由 祐裕誘遊邑郵雄融夕 | 482 | 乖乘亂」豫事舒弍于亞 亟 4 亢 京 亳 亶 从 仍 仄 仆 | 523 | 埔 埒 埓 堊 埖 埣 堋 堙 堝 塲 | 562 愆惶惷愀惴惺愃惚惻惱 563 愍愎慇愾愨愧慊愿愼愬 564 愴博慂慄慳慷慘慙慚慫 |
| | ل | 483 | 仂 仗 仞 仭 仟 价 伉 佚 估 佛 | 524 | 医外球性 医电子性 医电子性 医电子性 医电子性 医电子性 医电子性 医电子性 医电子 | 562 |
| 452 | 予 | 484 | 佝佗佇佶侈侏倥佻倜佰 | 525 | 墟 壿 墺 壞 墻 墸 墮 壅 壓 壑 | 566 |
| 453 | 余 与 誉 輿 預 傭 幼 妖 容 庸揚 揺 擁 曜 楊 様 洋 溶 熔 用 | 485 | 有 佯 來 侖 儘 俔 俟 俎 俘 倪 俑 俚 俐 俤 俥 倚 倨 倔 倪 倥 | 526 | | 567 應懷懈懃懆憺懋罹懍懦 568 懣懶懺懴懿懽懼懾戀戈 |
| 454 | 余 与 誉 輿 預 傭 幼 妖 容 庸 揚 揺 擁 曜 楊 様 洋 溶 熔 用 | 486 | 俑 俚 俐 俤 俥 倚 倨 倔 倪 倥 | 527 | 壻 壺 壽 夂 夂 夐 夛 梦 夥 夬 | 568 懣 懶 懺 懴 懿 懽 懼 懾 戀 戈 |
| 455 | 余与誉輿預傭幼妖容庸 揚搖攤曜楊様洋踊 雞雞 養終抑欲沃浴翌翼淀 | 487 | 倅 伜 俶 倡 债 倬 俾 俯 們 倆 | 528 | 堡墟墙野型 野野蟹蟹型 壁堰型火产 上,增增增量, 基本。 基本。 基本。 基本。 基本。 基本。 基本。 基本。 基本。 基本。 | 569 戊戌戌戔戛 |
| 456 | 余与誉輿預傭幼妖容庸 揚揺難曜楊様洋溶解 寒 霧 業 | 488 | 偃假會偕修偈做偖偬偸 | 529 | 奢奠奥獎奩 | 570 夏戡截戮戰戲戳扁扎 |
| | 5 | 489 | 傀 傚 傅 傴 傲 | 530 | 奸 妁 妝 佞 侫 妣 妇 姆 姨 | 571 |
| 456 | 羅 | 490 | 僉 僊 傳 僊 僖 僞 僥 僭 僣 | 531 | 姜 妍 娇 姚 娥 娟 娑 娜 娉 娚 | 572 抓 抖 拔 抃 抔 拗 拑 抻 拏 拿 |
| 457 | 螺 裸 来 莱 頼 雷 洛 絡 落 酪 乱 卵 嵐 欄 濫 藍 蘭 覧 | 491 | 競 僊 傳 僂 僖 僞 僥 僭 僣 僮 價 僵 儉 儁 儂 儖 儕 儔 儚 儡 儺 儷 儼 儻 儿 兀 兒 兌 兔 | 532 | 姜 妍 姙 姚 娥 娟 娑 娜 娉 娚 婀 婬 婉 娵 娶 婢 婪 媚 媼 媾 嫋 嫂 媽 嫣 嫗 嫦 嫩 嫖 嫺 嫻 | 573 拆擔拈拜拌树拂拇拗拉 |
| 458 | 螺 裸 来 莱 頼 雷 洛 絡 落 酪 乱 卵 嵐 欄 濫 藍 蘭 覧 | 492 | 儡 儺 儷 儼 儻 川 兀 兒 兌 兔 | 533 | 嫋 嫂 媽 嫣 嫗 嫦 嫩 嫖 嫺 嫻 | 573 拆 擔 拈 拜 拌 拊 拂 拇 抛 拉 574 挌 拮 拱 挧 挂 挈 拯 拵 捐 挾 |
| | b | 493 | 兢 競 兩 兪 兮 冀 口 囘 册 冉 | 534 | 嬌嬋嬖嬲嫐嬪嬶嬾孃孅 | 573 拆擔拓拜拌拼拂拇抛拉 574 格拮拱挧挂挈拯拵捐 575 捍搜捏掖掎掀掫捶掣掏 |
| 458 | 利吏 | 494 | 兢競兩家 兮冀 门 同 册 冉 問 青 冓 冕 冗 冤 冦 冩 冩 冩 ス 决 冱 冲 冰 况 冽 凅 凉 凛 | 535 | 網嬌孀學定寶和 別類等中的 別類等 的 別類等 中 門 別 類 等 中 門 類 等 中 院 類 等 中 に 胃 等 日 裏 系 大 に 胃 等 り に り ま り に り ま り に り ま り れ り り り り り り り り り り り り り り り り | 574 格括拱翅挂掣拯挤指掣 575 捍搜按摘摄操操操 576 掉捉掵捫振播操 577 揉插揶揄搖搴 577 揉插 |
| 459 A | | 495 | ン决冱冲冰况冽凋凉凛 | 536 | 媚子孕孚孛孥孩孰孳孵 學斈孺宀它宦宸寃寇寉 | 576 掉捉掵捫捩掾揩揀揆揣 577 揉插揶揄搖搴搆搓搦搶 |
| 460 | | 496 | 几.處.凩.恁.鳳 凾.刄.刋.刔 | 537 | 定 寐 寤 實 寢 寞 寥 寫 寰 寶 寶 尅 將 專 對 尓 尠 尢 尨 尸 | 578 攝 揚 揚 搏 摧 撃 摶 摎 攢 撕 |
| 461 7 | 痢 裏 裡 里 離 陸 律 率 立 葎 掠 略 劉 流 溜 琉 留 硫 粒 | 497 | 刎 刧 刪 刮 刳 刹 剏 剄 剋 剌 | 538 | 寔寐寤實寢寞寥寫寰寶 寶尅將專對尓尠尢尨尸 | 579 撓 撥 撩 撈 撼 |
| 462 B | 痢裏裡里離陸律率立 葎掠略劉流溜琉留硫粒 隆竜龍侶慮旅虜了亮僚 | 498 | 別 却 刑 刮 刳 剤 知 剋 刺 刺 剞 剔 剪 剴 剩 剳 剿 剽 劍 劔 | 539 | 尹屁屆屎屓 | 579 |
| 463 T | 東整 建型 離 陸 建 軍 並 並 整 達 電 亞 東 整 陸 建 軍 亞 亞 東 略 能 底 梁 强 原 縣 底 深 孫 孫 孫 孫 孫 孫 孫 孫 孫 袞 袞 袞 袞 袞 袞 袞 袞 袞 袞 | 499 | 劒剱劈劑辨 | 540 | 屐屏孱屬屮乢, 屶 屹 岌 | 580 據擒擅擇撻擘擂擱擧 581 舉擠擡抬擣擯攬擶擴擲 |
| | 糧良諒遼量陵領力緑倫 | 500 | | 541 | 今 岔 妛 岫 岻 岶 岼 岷 峅 岾 峇 峙 峩 峽 峺 峭 嶌 峪 崋 崕 崗 嵜 崟 崛 崑 崔 崢 崚 崙 崘 | 582 擺 攀 擽 攘 攜 掛 攤 變 攫 攴 |
| | 糧良諒遼量陵領力緑倫厘林淋燐琳臨輪隣鱗麟 | 501 | 辦 劬 劭 劼 券 勁 勍 勗 勞 動 勦 飭 勠 勳 勵 勸 勹 匆 匈 | 542 | | 583 安敦收收畋效敖敕敍敘 |
| | る~れ | 502 | 動 勦 飭 勠 勳 勵 勸 勹 匆 匈 甸 匍 匐 匏 匕 匚 匣 匯 匱 匳 | 543 | 崗嵜崟崛崑崔崢崚崙崘 | 584 敞敝敲數斂斃變斛斟斫 |
| 466 H | 瑠塁淚累類 令令伶例 冷励 大名 一个 一个 一个 一个 一个 一个 一个 一个 一个 一个 一个 一个 一个 | 503 | | 544 | 嵌品属帽嵬塞属幅新幢 | 585 斷旃旆旁旄旌旒旛旙无 |
| 467 | 嶺恰玲礼苓鈴隷零霊麗 | 504 | 后 夘 卻 卷 厂 彫 厠 厦 厰 厮 | 545 | 嶢嶝嶬嶮嶽嶐嶷嶼巉巍 | 586 无旱果昊昃旻杳昵昶昴 |
| 468 | 瑠 塁 涙 累 類 令 伶 例 冷 励 嶺 怜 玲 礼 苓 鈴 隷 零 霊麗 齢 暦 歴 列 劣 烈 裂 廉 恋 憐 | 505 | 厰 厶 參 篡 雙 叟 曼 燮 叮 叨 | 546 | 嚴 戀 巖 巛 巫 已 巵 帋 帚 帙 | 586 |
| 469 | 蓮 煉 簾 練 籐 | 506 | 叭 瓦 乒 碎 苺 匠 苋 虱 吮 祸 | 547 | 帑帛帶帷幄幃幀幎幗幔 | 588 晟哲晰罪量暎暉暄暘暝 |
| 470 | 蓮連錬 | 507 | | 548 | 幟幢幣幇幵并幺麼广庠 | 589 暨暹曉暾瞥 |
| | | 508 | 吩 吝 呎 咏 呵 咎 呟 呱 呷 呰 咒 呻 咀 呶 咄 咐 咆 哇 咢 咸 | 549 | 順廂慶廐廏 | 590 590 591 592 592 592 593 594 595 596 597 598 599 599 590 |
| 470 | 呂魯櫓炉賂路 | 509 | 座 咬 哄 哈 咨 | 550 | 廖廣廝廚廛廢廡廨廩 | 590 |
| 471 8 | 四日 魯 櫓 炉 賂 路露 労 婁 廊 弄 朗 楼 榔 浪 漏牢 狼 篭 老 聾 蝋 郎 六 麓 禄 | 510 | 咥 咬 哄 哈 咨 咫 哂 咤 咾 咼 哘 哥 哦 唏 | 551 | 序 厥 廰 庭 Z 如 井 女 壯 最 | 591 曳易朏朖朞朦朧霸朮束 592 朶杁朸朷杆杞杠杙杣杤 |
| 472 | 牢狼篭老聾蝋郎六麓禄 | 511 | 唔 哽 哮 哭 哺 哢 唹 啀 啣 啌 | 552 | 舞弋弑三弩弭弸彁彈彌 | 593 柱杰枩杼杪枌枋枦枡枅 |
| 473 F | 助録論 | 512 | 唔 哽 哮 哭 哺 哢 唹 啀 啣 啌 售 啜 啅 啖 啗 唸 唳 啝 喙 喀 | 553 | 彎弯互象彗彙彡彭彳彷 | 593 枉杰枩杼杪枌枋枦枡枅 594 枷柯枴柬枳柩枸柤柞柝 |
| | タ | 513 | 咯喊"曹啾""""""""""""""""""""""""""""""""""" | 554 | 彎弯 旦 彖 彗 彙 彡 彭 彳 彷 徃 徂 彿 徊 很 徑 徇 從 徙 徘 | 595 抵 柮 枹 柎 柆 柧 檜 栞 框 栩 |
| 473 | 倭和話歪賄脇惑 | 514 | 咯喊喟啻啾喘唧單啼喃啾喇喨鳴噗嚄嘴嗤嗔 | 555 | 廬雕廳就会 與明 | 595 抵 柮 枹 柎 柆 柧 檜 栞 框 栩 596 桀 桍 栲 桎 梳 栫 桙 档 桷 桿 |
| 474 | 倭 和 話 歪 賄 脇 惑 枠 鷲 亙 亘 鰐 詫 藁 蕨 椀 湾 | 515 | 嘔嗷嘖嗾嗽嘛嗹噎噐營 | 556 | 惠 忿 怡 恠 怙 怐 怩 怎 怱 怛 | 596 桀 桍 栲 桎 梳 栫 桙 档 桷 桿597 梟 梏 梭 梔 條 梛 梃 檮 梹 桴 |
| 475 | わ 倭和話歪賄脇惑 枠鷲亙亘鰐詫藁蕨椀湾 碗腕 | 516 | 嘴嘶嘲嘸噫喋嚅噬噪嚆 | 557 | 職務 職職 職職 職職 共獨主 就 生 主 明 報 是 生 生 生 生 生 生 生 生 生 生 生 生 生 | 595 抵 |
| | W 0 11/0 | 510 | AN AND MAN AND NOT NOT NOT NAME HAVE | 557 | | |





| Normally Displayed | | | |
|--------------------|----------------------|--|--|
| * | Clear (Day) | | |
| J | Clear (Night) | | |
| 60 | Cloudy | | |
| 7 | Rain | | |
| 8 ⁴ | Snow | | |
| & | Thunder and Lighting | | |
| 0% | 0% Chance of Rain | | |
| 10 % | 10% Chance of Rain | | |
| 20 % | 20% Chance of Rain | | |
| 30% | 30% Chance of Rain | | |
| 40% | 40% Chance of Rain | | |
| 50 w | 50% Chance of Rain | | |
| 60% | 60% Chance of Rain | | |
| 70% | 70% Chance of Rain | | |
| 80 w | 80% Chance of Rain | | |
| 90% | 90% Chance of Rain | | |
| 100% | 100% Chance of Rain | | |

Later

Partial

| | Pollen Level |
|-----|----------------|
| | Low |
| | Moderate |
| *** | High |
| | Extremely High |

| Sakura Blossoms | | | | |
|-----------------|-----------------|--|--|--|
| Q | Budding | | | |
| a | Near Full Bloom | | | |
| r R | Peak Bloom | | | |
| To | Past Peak | | | |

| Autumn Foliage | | | | |
|----------------|----------------|--|--|--|
| 女 | No Color | | | |
| 郊 | Moderate Color | | | |
| * | Peak Color | | | |
| * | Past Peak | | | |

| UV Level | | | | |
|----------|-----------|--|--|--|
| @ | Low | | | |
| 孌 | Moderate | | | |
| * | High | | | |
| * | Very High | | | |

| Typhoon | | | | |
|----------|------------------|--|--|--|
| ~ | Forming | | | |
| S | Approaching | | | |
| 6 | Emergency Status | | | |

| Other Information | | | |
|-------------------|--------------|--|--|
| 歃 | Heavy Rain | | |
| 2 | Strong Winds | | |
| | Notification | | |





- Enter menu item numbers for direct menu access. Note that Main Menu theme must be set to **Basic**.
- · See "Check Style Mode Settings" (P. 14-3) for menu items whose default settings differ according to the model color.

Mail

| 2nd-level Menu | 3rd-level Menu | Menu No. | Default Setting | Refer to |
|-----------------|------------------------|----------|---|-----------------------|
| Inbox | - | - | - | P. 5-9 |
| Outbox | _ | - | - | P. 5-12 |
| Draft | - | - | - | P. 5-23 |
| Compose Message | - | - | - | P. 5-3 |
| Compose SMS | _ | _ | - | P. 5-7 |
| Server Mail | Mail List | _ | - | P. 5-10, P. 5-20 |
| | Server Mail Memory | - | - | P. 5-20 |
| Retrieve New | - | - | - | |
| Templates | - | - | - | P. 5-19 |
| Itsumono-Mail | _ | - | - | P. 5-6 |
| Mail Setting | Custom Mail Address | - | - | P. 14-16 |
| | Scroll | - | 1 Line | P. 14-17 |
| | Font Size | - | Standard | |
| | Mail List Disp. | _ | 1 Line+Body (Name) | |
| | Start Attachment(auto) | - | OFF | |
| | Header/Signature | _ | Edit Header, Edit Signature: Not Stored, Edit Quotation Marks:, Insert Setting: Selected | P. 14-16, P. 14-17 |
| | Mail Box Lock | - | Inbox, Outbox, Draft, Server Mail: Unlocked | P. 5-14 |

| 2nd-level Menu | 3rd-level Menu | Menu No. | Default Setting | Refer to |
|----------------|---------------------|----------|---|----------|
| Mail Setting | Receiving Setting | - | Operation Preferred | P. 14-17 |
| | Read Out Setting | - | Select Voice: Female 1, Read Out Received Mail: ON | |
| | Emotion/Keyword | _ | Disp. Emotion: ON, Disp. Keyword: OFF | P. 14-16 |
| | S! Mail Settings | _ | Message Download: Auto(All), Delivery Report: OFF | |
| | SMS Settings | - | SMS Report Request: OFF, SMS Validity Period: 3 Days, SMS Input Character: Japanese(70char.) | |
| | Report Spam Setting | - | stop@meiwaku.softbankmobile.co.jp | P. 14-17 |
| | Check Mail Settings | _ | - | |
| | Reset Mail Settings | _ | - | |

Yahoo!

| 2nd-level Menu | 3rd-level Menu | Menu No. | Default Setting | Refer to |
|-----------------|----------------|----------|--|----------|
| Yahoo! Keitai | - | - | - | P. 6-3 |
| Menu List | - | _ | - | |
| Bookmark | - | - | - | P. 6-9 |
| Saved Pages | - | _ | - | |
| History | - | _ | - | P. 6-3 |
| Enter URL | - | - | - | |
| PC Site Browser | - | - | See "PC Site Browser under Yahoo!" (P. 15-32). | - |



Menu List

| 2nd-level Menu | 3rd-level Menu | Menu No. | Default Setting | Refer to |
|------------------|---------------------|----------|--|----------|
| Browser Settings | Font Size | _ | Standard | P. 14-19 |
| | Scroll | _ | Single Line | |
| | Downloads | _ | Display Images: ON, Play Sounds: ON | |
| | Flash Sound Effect | _ | ON | |
| | Memory Manager | _ | - | |
| | Security | _ | Manufacture Number: ON, Send Referer: ON, Cookie Settings: Enabled | |
| | Check Settings | _ | - | |
| | Initialized Browser | Ì | - | |
| | Reset | _ | - | |

S! Appli

| 2nd-level Menu | 3rd-level Menu | Menu No. | Default Setting | Refer to |
|----------------|--------------------|----------|--|----------|
| S! Appli List | - | _ | - | P. 9-7 |
| Settings | Sound/Vib Settings | _ | Volume: Level 4, Vibration: ON | P. 14-24 |
| | Backlight Settings | _ | Switch ON/OFF: Link To Phone Set., Blink: ON | |
| | Reset | _ | - | |
| Information | _ | ı | - | P. 9-7 |

Entertainment

| 2nd-level Menu | 3rd-level Menu | Menu No. | Default Setting | Refer to |
|---------------------|---------------------|----------|--|----------|
| S! Info Ch./Weather | What's New | _ | - | P. 10-3 |
| | History | _ | - | |
| | Register/Cancel | _ | - | |
| | Get Latest Contents | _ | - | P. 10-6 |
| | Settings | _ | S! Information Notif.: ON, Font Size: Standard | P. 14-25 |
| | Weather Indicator | _ | See "Weather Indicator for S! Info Ch./Weather under Entertainment" (P. 15-32) | - |
| S! Quick News | S! Quick News List | _ | - | P. 10-2 |
| | Settings | _ | See "Settings for S! Quick News under Entertainment" (P. 15-33) | _ |
| S! Contents Store | - | - | - | P. 10-5 |

Camera

| 2nd-level Menu | 3rd-level Menu | Menu No. | Default Setting | Refer to |
|----------------|----------------|----------|-----------------|----------|
| Photo Mode | _ | _ | - | P. 7-5 |
| Movie Mode | _ | _ | - | P. 7-7 |
| Voice Mode | _ | _ | - | P. 7-10 |
| My Picture | _ | _ | - | P. 12-2 |
| Videos | - | _ | - | |

Music

| 2nd-level Menu | 3rd-level Menu | Menu No. | Default Setting | Refer to |
|----------------|----------------|----------|-----------------|----------|
| _ | _ | _ | - | P. 9-5 |



Tools

| 2nd-level Menu | 3rd-level Menu | Menu No. | Default Setting | Refer to |
|------------------------|--------------------|----------|-----------------|----------|
| Alarm | - | 44 | - | P. 11-12 |
| Schedule | - | 45 | - | P. 11-4 |
| Calculator | - | 85 | - | P. 11-11 |
| Dictionary | Enter Word | _ | - | P. 2-27 |
| | Text Reader | _ | - | _ |
| | Reference History | _ | - | P. 2-27 |
| Text Memo | - | 42 | - | P. 11-9 |
| To Do List | - | 95 | - | P. 11-7 |
| Life History Viewer | - | _ | - | P. 11-2 |
| S! Addressbook Back-up | Start Sync | _ | _ | P. 2-24 |
| | Auto Sync Settings | _ | ON/OFF: OFF | P. 14-12 |
| | Sync Log | _ | - | P. 2-25 |
| Account Details | - | 0 | - | P. 1-21 |
| Bar Code Reader | - | _ | - | P. 11-14 |
| Text Reader | - | _ | - | P. 11-16 |
| Receive Ir Data | - | 79 | - | P. 13-3 |
| Play/Erase Msg. | - | _ | - | P. 3-5, |
| | | | | P. 3-18 |
| Play/Erase VC Msg. | _ | _ | - | P. 3-5 |
| Voice Memo | _ | 43 | - | P. 11-10 |
| Voice Announce | _ | 91 | - | P. 14-10 |
| Forwarding Image | _ | _ | ON | P. 14-12 |
| microSD Manager | - | _ | - | P. 12-11 |



| 2nd-level Menu | 3rd-level Menu | Menu No. | Default Setting | Refer to |
|----------------|----------------|----------|-----------------|----------|
| USIM Operation | - | - | - | P. 2-23, |
| | | | | P. 5-22 |

Data Folder

| 2nd-level Menu | 3rd-level Menu | Menu No. | Default Setting | Refer to |
|------------------|----------------|----------|-----------------|----------|
| My Picture | _ | 46 | - | P. 12-2 |
| Melody | _ | 16 | - | |
| S! Appli | _ | _ | - | |
| Ring Songs·Music | _ | _ | - | |
| Videos | - | _ | - | |
| TV | _ | _ | - | 1 |

Own Data

| 2nd-level Menu | 3rd-level Menu | Menu No. | Default Setting | Refer to |
|----------------|----------------|----------|-----------------|----------|
| Received Calls | _ | 24 | - | P. 3-10 |
| Dialed Calls | _ | _ | - | |
| Mail Member | - | 97 | - | P. 5-6 |
| Tomo-Den | - | _ | - | P. 3-12 |
| Common Phrases | _ | 38 | - | P. 2-14 |
| Own Dictionary | _ | 82 | - | P. 2-15 |
| DL Dictionary | - | _ | _ | |



TV

| 2nd-level Menu | 3rd-level Menu | Menu No. | Default Setting | Refer to |
|----------------------|------------------------|----------|---------------------------------------|----------|
| Watch TV | - | _ | - | P. 8-5 |
| Program Guide | - | - | - | P. 8-6 |
| Booking Program List | - | - | - | P. 8-10 |
| Timer Recording List | - | - | - | |
| Result Timer Rec | - | - | - | P. 8-15 |
| TV Link | - | - | - | P. 8-13 |
| Channel List | - | - | - | P. 8-12 |
| Channel Settings | - | - | - | P. 8-3 |
| User Settings | Subtitles | - | ON(Wide:Bottom) | P. 14-21 |
| | Rec. While Low Battery | - | ON | P. 14-22 |
| | TV Sound While Closed | _ | ON | P. 14-21 |
| | TV Power Saving | - | OFF (not set) | |
| | Display Light | - | Constant Light | |
| | Data BC Settings | - | Set Image Disp.: ON, Sound Effect: ON | P. 14-22 |
| | Icon Always Show | - | ON | P. 14-21 |
| | Check TV Settings | - | - | P. 14-22 |
| | Reset Channel Setting | - | - | |
| | Reset Storage Area | - | - | |
| | Reset TV Settings | _ | _ | |

Phone Book

| 2nd-level Menu | 3rd-level Menu | Menu No. | Default Setting | Refer to |
|----------------|----------------|----------|-----------------|----------|
| - | - | - | _ | P. 2-18 |

Settings

| 2nd-level Menu | 3rd-level Menu | Menu No. | Default Setting | Refer to |
|--------------------|------------------------|----------|---|----------|
| Style Mode Setting | - | _ | Varies by model color. | P. 14-3 |
| Incoming Call | Ring Volume | 50 | Phone, Video Call, Mail: Level 4 | P. 14-8 |
| | Select Ring Tone | 13 | Phone (Select Ring Tone: Pattern 1, Select Calling Disp.: Flying Type), Video Call (Select Ring Tone: Pattern 3, Select Calling Disp.: Flying Type), Mail (Select Ring Tone: You've got mail 1, Select Receiving Disp.: Flying Type) | |
| | Vibrator | 54 | Phone, Video Call, Mail: OFF | P. 14-9 |
| | Illumination | 89 | Set Color (Phone: Color 3, Video Call: Color 5, Mail: Color 10), Set Pattern: Standard, Missed Info: ON | |
| | Manner Mode Set | 20 | Manner Mode | P. 14-10 |
| | Setting when Opened | _ | Answer Incoming, Display New Mail, Display Missed Call: OFF | P. 14-9 |
| | Disp. Phone Book Image | _ | ON | |
| | Answer Setting | 58 | Any Key Answer | |
| | Mail Ring Time | 68 | ON (Ring Time: 5 Seconds) | P. 14-8 |
| | Ring Time(sec.) | 90 | Set Mute Seconds: OFF, Missed Calls Display: Display | P. 4-5 |
| | Info Notice Setting | 65 | ON | P. 14-10 |
| | Answering Machine | 55 | OFF | P. 3-4 |
| | Disp. Call/Receive No. | _ | Varies by model color. | P. 14-10 |



Menu List

| 2nd-level Menu | 3rd-level Menu | Menu No. | Default Setting | Refer to |
|----------------|-----------------------|----------|---|----------|
| Talk | Hyper Clear Voice | _ | Low | P. 14-13 |
| | Noise Reduction | 76 | ON | 1 |
| | Quality Alarm | 75 | No Tone | 1 |
| | Reconnect Signal | 77 | No Tone | |
| | Illumination in Talk | - | OFF | |
| | Set Hold Tone | - | On Hold Tone: Tone 1 | |
| | Setting when Folded | 18 | End the Call | |
| Dialing | Pause Dial | 84 | - | P. 14-12 |
| | Sub-address Setting | _ | OFF | |
| | Prefix Setting | _ | 国際発信 (Prefix: 0046010) | |
| | Headset SW to Dial | _ | OFF | P. 14-11 |
| | Int'l Dial Assistance | - | Auto Int'l Call Set.: ON (Country Code: 日本, IDD Prefix Code: 国際発信), Country Code Setting: 日本 (Country Code: 81), IDD Prefix Setting: 国際 発信 (IDD Prefix Code: 0046010) | P. 14-13 |
| Video Call | Visual Preference | - | Normal | P. 3-17 |
| | Select Image | _ | On Hold, Holding, Substitute Image, Answering Machine, Preparing, Voice Memo: Pre-installed | P. 14-14 |
| | Auto Redial as Voice | _ | OFF | 1 |
| | Display Setting | _ | Main Display: Other Side | 1 |
| | Hands-free Switch | _ | ON | 1 |



| 2nd-level Menu | 3rd-level Menu | Menu No. | Default Setting | Refer to |
|----------------|---------------------|----------|---|----------|
| Display | Display Setting | 56 | Stand-by Display: Varies by model color., Wake-up Display, Dialing: Flying Type, Calling (Select Ring Tone: Pattern 1, Select Calling Disp.: Flying Type), Video Call Dialing: Flying Type, Video Call Calling (Select Ring Tone: Pattern 3, Select Calling Disp.: Flying Type), Mail Sending: Flying Type, Mail Receiving (Select Ring Tone: You've got mail 1, Select Receiving Disp.: Flying Type), Retrieve New, Mail Rec'd Result: Flying Type | P. 14-3 |
| | Backlight | 70 | Lighting: ON+Saver (Light Time: 1 Minutes), Charging: Standard, Area: LCD+Keys, Brightness: ON+Middle | P. 14-5 |
| | Display Design | 86 | Color Theme: Varies by model color., Icon Pattern (Battery Icon, Antenna Icon: White), Soft Key: Varies by model color. | P. 14-4 |
| | Sub-display Setting | 93 | ON (Disp. Clock Only: OFF, Clock Type: Digital 1, Called, Mail, Connection: ON, Time Signal: ON (60 Minutes), Display Time: 15 Seconds | P. 14-8 |
| | Font | 66 | Font Type: Gothic, Thickness: Bold, Character Size: Standard | P. 14-4 |
| | Desktop Icon | 63 | Theme 1 (S! Quick News List, TV, Quick Search, Bar Code Reader) | P. 14-6 |
| | 3D Display Setting | - | ON | |
| | 言語選択 (Language) | 15 | 日本語 | P. 14-5 |
| | Original Menu | 52 | Account Details, Receive Ir Data, Calculator, Schedule, Text Memo, Alarm, Bar Code Reader, Dictionary, My Picture, Secret Mode | P. 14-7 |
| | Menu Display Set | 57 | Menu Display: List, Theme: Varies by model color., Memory Focus: OFF | |
| | Viewer Settings | _ | Picture | P. 14-5 |
| | Icons | 36 | - | P. 1-7 |
| | Icons Setting | _ | ON | P. 14-7 |
| | Privacy Angle | - | OFF | P. 14-5 |
| | Quick Info Setting | _ | Display Sender | 1 |
| | Screen Effect | _ | OFF | 1 |





| 2nd-level Menu | 3rd-level Menu | Menu No. | Default Setting | Refer to |
|---------------------|-----------------------|----------|--|----------|
| Call Time/Charge | Call Data | 61 | - | P. 3-11 |
| | Set Max Cost Limit | _ | Notify Setting: OFF | P. 14-14 |
| | Reset Total | 60 | - | P. 3-18 |
| | Auto Reset Total Cost | _ | OFF | P. 14-14 |
| Clock | Set Main Time | 31 | Time Adjustment: Auto (Time Zone: GMT+09 Japan), Summer Time: OFF | P. 14-2 |
| | Set Sub Clock | _ | Display Method: OFF, Summer Time: OFF | |
| | Clock Display | 39 | Display: ON, Size: Big, Color: Varies by model color. | |
| | Alarm Setting | _ | Alarm Preferred | |
| | Clock Alarm Tone Set | _ | Alarm Tone | |
| | Auto Power ON | _ | OFF | P. 14-3 |
| | Auto Power OFF | _ | OFF | |
| Security | Function Lock | _ | OFF | P. 4-3 |
| | Keypad Lock | _ | After Closed: OFF, Timer: OFF | P. 4-4 |
| | Emission OFF Mode | _ | NO (not set) | P. 4-5 |
| | Secret Mode | 40 | OFF (not set) | P. 4-6 |
| | Secret Data Only Mode | 41 | OFF (not set) | |
| | Reject Unknown | _ | Accept | P. 4-5 |
| | Call Setting W/O ID | 10 | Unknown, Payphone, User Unset: Accept (Select Ring Tone: Same as Ring Tone, Select Calling Disp.: Same as Display) | |
| | Change Security Code | 29 | 9999 | P. 1-20 |
| | PIN Setting | _ | - | P. 4-2 |
| External Connection | USB Mode Setting | - | Communication Mode | P. 13-5 |
| | Headset Usage Setting | 51 | Headset+speaker | P. 14-11 |
| | Headset Mic. Setting | _ | Headset Microphone | |
| | Auto Answer Setting | 94 | Phone, Video Call: OFF | |



| 2nd-level Menu | 3rd-level Menu | Menu No. | Default Setting | Refer to |
|---------------------|------------------------|----------|--|----------|
| Connection Settings | SMS Center Selection | _ | 819066519300 | P. 14-18 |
| | Certificate | _ | All Certificates: Valid | P. 6-12 |
| | Retrieve NW Info | _ | - | P. 1-17 |
| Send Location Info | - | _ | Confirm | P. 14-20 |
| Int'l Roaming Set | NW Search Mode | _ | Auto | P. 14-15 |
| | Display Operator Name | _ | Display OFF | |
| Optional Services | Caller ID Notification | 17 | Activate/Deactivate: ON | P. 3-20 |
| | Voice Mail/Divert | _ | - | P. 3-14, |
| | | | | P. 3-19 |
| | Call Waiting | _ | - | P. 3-19 |
| | Call Barring | _ | - | P. 3-20 |
| Other Settings | Keypad Sound | 30 | OFF | P. 14-10 |
| | Charge Sound | _ | ON | |
| | Battery Level | 71 | - | P. 1-21 |
| | Side Key Guard | _ | OFF | P. 1-22 |
| | Character Input Set | 35 | Input Mode: 5-touch, Prediction: ON, T9 Change Mode: T9 Kanji Change Mode, CHG Input Size: Standard, Auto Cursor: OFF | P. 14-27 |
| | Shortcut-key Setting | _ | Itsumono-Mail | |
| | Closed Illum. | _ | ON (Set Illumination: Varies by model color., Set Pattern: Firefly | |
| | Reset Settings | 23 | - | P. 14-28 |
| | Initialize | _ | - | |
| | Software Update | _ | - | P. 15-4 |



PC Site Browser under Yahoo!

Menu List

| 4th-level Menu | 5th-level Menu | Menu No. | Default Setting | Refer to |
|-----------------------|------------------------|----------|---|-----------------------|
| Home | _ | _ | - | P. 6-5 |
| Bookmark | _ | _ | - | P. 6-9 |
| History | - | - | - | P. 6-6 |
| Enter URL | - | - | - | |
| Yahoo! Keitai | _ | _ | - | P. 6-3 |
| PC Site Brw. Settings | Warning Messages | _ | ON | P. 14-20 |
| | Scroll | - | Single Line | P. 14-19 |
| | Display Mode Settings | - | PC Screen: 100%, Small Screen: Standard | P. 14-20 |
| | Downloads | - | Display Images: ON, Play Sounds: ON | P. 14-19 |
| | Memory Manager | _ | - | |
| | Security | - | Manufacture Number: ON, Send Referer: ON, Cookie Settings: Enabled, Script Settings: ON | P. 14-19, P. 14-20 |
| | Check PC Site Brw. Set | - | - | P. 14-19 |
| | Initialized Browser | - | - | |
| | Reset PC Site Brw. Set | _ | - | 1 |

Weather Indicator for S! Info Ch./Weather under Entertainment

| 4th-level Menu | 5th-level Menu | Menu No. | Default Setting | Refer to |
|----------------|-----------------|----------|-----------------|----------|
| Weather | _ | _ | = | P. 10-3 |
| Manual Update | - | - | - | P. 10-6 |
| Settings | Weather Update | - | ON | P. 14-26 |
| | Standby Setting | - | ON | |
| | Weather Notif. | - | ON | |

Settings for S! Quick News under Entertainment

| 4th-level Menu | 5th-level Menu | Menu No. | Default Setting | Refer to |
|------------------|--------------------|----------|-----------------|----------|
| Auto Refresh | S! Quick News | _ | OFF | P. 14-25 |
| | General | _ | OFF | |
| | Special | _ | OFF | |
| Standby Settings | Standby Disp. Set. | _ | ON | |
| | Speed Settings | _ | Normal | |
| | Unread & Read Set. | _ | Unread & Read | |
| Set Image Disp. | - | _ | ON | |
| Del. Quick News | _ | _ | - | |



Main Specifications

| Model | | 840N |
|------------------------------|-------------|--|
| Dimensions ((When Closed | | Approx. 107 x 50 x 15.4 mm (thickest Part: Approx. 17.7 mm) |
| Weight | | Approx. 104 g |
| Continuous S | tandby Time | Approx. 680 hrs |
| Continuous T | alk Time | Voice Call: Approx. 250 min. Video Call: Approx. 130 min. |
| Charging Tim | ie | Up to approx. 120 min. |
| Display/ Sub-display | Туре | Display: TFT 262,144 colors Sub-display: Organic EL one color |
| | Size | Display: Approx. 2.9 inches Sub-display: Approx. 0.77 inches |
| | Pixels | Display: 102,480 pixels (240 x 427 dots) Sub-display: 3,744 pixels (96 x 39 dots) |

| _ | | |
|---|--------------------------------------|---|
| Camera | Imaging device | CMOS |
| | Lens size | 1/4.0 inch |
| | Effective pixels | Approx. 5.1 million pixels |
| | Recording pixels | Approx. 4.9 million pixels |
| | Zoom (digital) | Still image: Up to approx. 3.8 x Video: Up to approx. 5.5 x |
| | Still images | Up to approx. 1,000 files ¹ |
| | Still images for continuous shooting | 4 to 20 files ² |
| | Still image file format | JPEG |
| | Video recording time | Handset: Up to approx. 12 min./ recording, total 480 min. ³ Memory card: Up to approx. 120 min. ³ |
| | Video file format | MP4 |
| TV | Continuous watching time | Approx. 310 min. |
| | Maximum recording time | Approx. 600 min. ⁴ |
| Chaku-Uta [®] and Chaku- Uta Full [®] | Storage Capacity | Approx. 80 MB ⁵ |

- 1 In case the image size is *SubQCIF(128 x 96)* and the image quality is set to *Fine* (the file size is 10 KB).
- 2 Varies depending on the image size.

3 Time for recording when recorded in the following conditions:

| | Handset | Memory card |
|----------------|--|-------------|
| Image size | SubQCIF (128 × 96) | |
| Image quality | Long Dur. Mode Normal or Long Dur. Mod | |
| File size | 2MB Long Time | |
| Recording type | Normal | |

- 4 Approximate time when recorded on a 2 GB memory card.
- 5 Shared with images, videos, saved pages, images (captured with TV) and graphic mail templates.

Handset Materials

| Hand | dset Parts | Material/Finish |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------|--|
| Rear display panel | | Acrylic resin, dichroic vapor deposition + UV coating |
| Decorative ring (around Camera lens) | | ABS resin, aluminum vapor deposition + UV coating |
| Charger terminals (Desktop Holder) | | Phosphor bronze, gold plating |
| Battery | Screws | Iron, chromate |
| compartment | Compartment surface | Stainless alloy, nickel plating |
| | Terminals | Titanium copper, gold plating |

Maximum Number of Storable Items

| ŀ | tem | Maximum Number | Maximum That Can be Protected |
|---------------------------|-------------------|---------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Phone Book e | ntries | 1,000 ¹ | _ |
| Schedule | Events | 500 | _ |
| | Holidays | 100 | _ |
| | Anniversaries | 100 | _ |
| To Do List | Tasks | 100 | _ |
| S! Mail/SMS | Received messages | 1,000 ^{2 3 4 5} | 1,000 ² |
| | Sent messages | 400 ^{2 3 4} | 200 ² |
| | Draft messages | 20 ² | _ |
| Bookmarks | Yahoo! Keitai | 100 ^{5 6} | _ |
| | PC Site Browser | 100 ⁶ | _ |
| Saved Pages | | 100 ² | 50 ² |
| S! Appli | | 100 ^{2 5} | _ |
| Still images | | 1,000 ² ⁴ | _ |
| Videos | | 100 ^{2 6} | _ |
| Captured screehshots (TV) | | 100 ² | _ |
| Melody files | | 200 ² | _ |
| Songs | | 100 ² | _ |
| Template (Gra | phic Mail) | 1,000 ^{2 5} | _ |

| ŀ | tem | Maximum Number | Maximum That Can be Protected |
|----------------|-------------|------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Answering | Voice calls | 5 (20 sec. each) | ı |
| Machine | Video calls | 2 (20 sec. each) | ı |
| Voice Memo | | 1 (20 sec.) | - |
| Dialed Calls | | 30 | - |
| Received Calls | | 30 | - |
| Redial | | 30 | _ |
| Speed Dial | | 10 (Entry Number 000-009) | _ |

- 1 Up to 50 entries can be saved on USIM Card.
- 2 The actual number that can be saved or protected may be less depending on the data size.
- 3 An additional 10 received and sent SMS messages can be saved on USIM Card.
- 4 Up to 100 additional messages/files can be saved in Secret Folders.
- 5 Includes data stored by default.
- 6 Up to 10 additional files can be saved in Secret Folder.

Memory Card Folders & Files

| Folder | | | File | |
|---------|-----------------------|-----------|--------------------|--|
| DCIM | XXXNECDT ¹ | | | Still images captured with Camera and JPEG images copied or moved from handset |
| MISC | MISC | | | Settings file for DPOF printing |
| PRIVATE | MYFOLDER | Mail | Drafts | Backup data of Draft |
| | | | Inbox | Backup data of Inbox |
| | | | Sent Messages | Backup data of Outbox |
| | | Utility | Calendar | Backup data of Schedule |
| | | | Contacts | Backup data of Phone Book |
| | | | Memo | Backup data of Text Memo |
| | | | Rights | Backup file of content keys |
| | | | Tasks | Backup file of To Do List |
| | | My Items | Bookmarks | Backup file of Bookmarks |
| | | | Flash(R) | Flash® files |
| | | | Games and More | S! Appli files |
| | | | Music | Songs |
| | | | Pictograms | My Pictograms |
| | | | Pictures | Still images |
| | | | Sounds & Ringtones | Melodies |
| | | | Videos | Videos |
| | | NE_Folder | • | Other files |

Specifications

| | Folder | File |
|----------|---------------------|--------------------------------------|
| SD_VIDEO | MGR_INFO | TV Program recording management file |
| | PRGXXX ² | TV Program recording files |

- 1 XXX: Three single-byte numbers from 100 to 999
- 2 XXX: Three single-byte alphanumeric characters (hexadecimal) from 001 to FFF

Number

| 2-touch Mode | 2-1 |
|--------------------|------|
| 3D Display Setting | 14-6 |
| 5-touch Mode | 2-1 |

A

| Access Files | 12-3 |
|--------------------------|----------|
| Composite Image | 12-14 |
| List Setting | 12-15 |
| Set Image Disp | 12-14 |
| Access Handset Functions | 2-2 |
| Access History | 6-3, 6-6 |
| Delete | |
| Access the Internet | |
| Access menu list | 6-3 |
| From Bookmarks | 6-9 |
| From Data Broadcasts | 8-6 |
| From Entered URL Record | 6-11 |
| From Scanned Data | 11-22 |
| From TV Links | 8-13 |
| From URL in Text | 5-23 |
| From Web Page | |
| Open New Tab | 6-7 |
| PC Site Browser | 6-5 |
| Use Access History | 6-3, 6-6 |
| Yahoo! Keitai | |
| Account Details | 1-21 |
| Add Folder | |
| Bookmark | 6-14 |
| | |

| Data Folder | 12-9 |
|-------------------------------|-------|
| Messages | 5-22 |
| Adjust Earpiece Volume | |
| After Sales Service | |
| Alarm | 11-12 |
| Cancel | 11-13 |
| Edit | |
| Release All | 11-2 |
| Set | |
| Alarm Activation Operations | |
| Alarm Notification Operations | |
| Schedule | 11-5 |
| To Do List | |
| Alarm Setting | |
| Answer Calls | |
| Video Calls | 3-8 |
| Voice Calls | 3-4 |
| Answer Setting | |
| Answering Machine | |
| Activate When a Call Arrives | 3-4 |
| Delete Messages | 3-18 |
| Play Messages | |
| Settings | 3-4 |
| Any Key Answer | |
| Attach to Mail | |
| Bookmark | 6-14 |
| Delete Attached Files | 5-18 |
| Files | |
| Shot Still Image/Video | |
| Authentication Password | 13-3 |

| Auto Answer Setting | 14-11 |
|--------------------------------|-------|
| Auto Cursor | 14-27 |
| Auto Power On/Off | 14-3 |
| Auto Redial as Voice | 14-14 |
| Auto Refresh (S! Quick News) . | 14-25 |
| Auto Reset Total Cost | 14-14 |
| Auto Save Set | 7-4 |
| Auto Timer | 7-10 |
| Auto-sort | 5-14 |
| _ | |
| B | |
| Backlight | 14-5 |
| Backlight Settings (S! Appli) | 14-24 |
| Bar Code Reader | |
| Check Scanned Data | 11-14 |
| Delete Scanned Data | |
| Scan | 11-14 |
| Basic Key Operations | 1-3 |
| Battery | |
| Installation | |
| Bookmarks | |
| Access Page | |
| Add Folder | |
| Delete | |
| Delete Folder | |
| Edit URL | |
| Move | |
| Number of Bookmarks | b-14 |



| Save Scanned URL | 11-22 |
|----------------------|---------------------|
| Send by S! Mail | 6-14 |
| Sort Folder | 6-14 |
| | |
| C | |
| Calculator | 11-11 |
| Call Barring | 3-20 |
| Call Forwarding | 3-14 |
| Call Rejection | |
| Call Time/Charge | 3-11 |
| Call Waiting | |
| Call While Abroad | |
| Caller ID | |
| Camera | |
| Auto Save Set | |
| Capture Still Images | |
| Effect | |
| Flicker | |
| Memory Info | |
| Movie Type Set | |
| Quality Setting | 7-12 |
| Record Videos | 7-7 |
| Settings | |
| Shake Correction | . 7-4 , 7-12 |
| Viewfinders | 7-3 |
| Capture Still Images | 7-5 |
| Auto Timer | 7-10 |
| Continuous Shooting | 7-9 |
| Frame | |
| Center Access Code | 1-20 |

| Certificate | 6-12 |
|-----------------------------------|-------|
| Chance Capture | 7-10 |
| Change | |
| E-mail Address | 14-16 |
| Entry Number | 2-29 |
| Font Size (Message Text) | 5-24 |
| Graphic Mail Effects | 5-19 |
| Icon Image | 2-26 |
| Network Password | |
| PIN1/PIN2 | 4-2 |
| Security Code | 1-20 |
| Set To, Cc or Bcc | 5-17 |
| Channel List | 14-21 |
| Delete a Channel | 14-21 |
| Remote Control Numbers | |
| Save Stations of a Different Area | 8-12 |
| Switch | 8-12 |
| Channel Settings | 8-3 |
| Automatic | 8-12 |
| Character Stamp | 12-7 |
| Charge Battery | 1-13 |
| AC Charger | 1-15 |
| Desktop Holder | 1-16 |
| Charge Sound | 14-10 |
| Check Battery Level | |
| Check Mail Settings | 14-17 |
| Check PC Site Brw. Set | |
| Check Settings (Yahoo! Keitai) | |
| Check TV Settings | |
| CHG Input Method | |
| CHG IIIPUL WEU100 | ∠-11 |

| CHG Input Size | 14-27 |
|----------------------------|-------|
| Clear Learned (Text Entry) | 14-27 |
| Clock | |
| Clock Alarm Tone Set | 14-2 |
| Clock Display | |
| Closed Illumination | |
| | |
| Codes | |
| Center Access Code | |
| Network Password | |
| PIN1/PIN2 | |
| Security Code | 1-20 |
| Compose & Send Messages | |
| Attach Files | |
| Compose S! Mail | 5-3 |
| Compose SMS | |
| Delete Receiver | |
| Edit | |
| From Phone Book | |
| From Scanned Data | |
| From Tomo-Den | |
| From Web Page | 6-12 |
| Graphic Mail | 5-3 |
| Insert Header/Signature | |
| Itsumono-Mail | |
| Save | 5-18 |
| Set Priority | 5-18 |
| Specify Mail Member List | |
| Recipients | |
| To, Cc or Bcc | |
| Compose Messages | |
| | |

| dex | Q |
|-----|---|
| | |

| Cookie Settings (Internet) | . 14-19 |
|-------------------------------|---------|
| Сору | |
| Between Handset & Memory Card | |
| Event | |
| Phone Book Entries2-23 | • |
| SMS Messages | |
| Text | |
| Customer Service | |
| Customize Mail Address | . 14-16 |
| D | |
| Data BC Settings | 14-22 |
| Data Broadcasts | 8-6 |
| Data Folder | 12-2 |
| Add Folder | 12-9 |
| Change Order of Files | 12-14 |
| Check File Information | |
| Delete Files | 12-16 |
| Delete Folder | 12-16 |
| Edit File Name | . 12-16 |
| Edit Folder Name | . 12-15 |
| Edit Still Images | 12-7 |
| Edit Videos | |
| Memory Info | |
| Move Files | |
| Open Files | |
| Original Animation | |
| Playlist (Melody) | |
| Playlist (Video) | 12-5 |

Continuous Shooting7-9

| Ringtone | 12-14 |
|------------------------------|-------|
| Secret Folders | 4-6 |
| Stand-by Display | 12-14 |
| Data Transfer Tool | 13-! |
| Delete All S! Appli | |
| Delete Cache | |
| Delete Cookies | |
| Delete Quick News | |
| Delivery Report (S! Mail) | |
| Desktop Icon Settings | |
| | |
| Desktop Icons | |
| Add Icons | |
| Change Icon Image | 2-26 |
| Delete Desktop Icons | |
| Reset | |
| Show/Hide | |
| Sort | 2-26 |
| Dial | |
| From Dialed Calls | 3-10 |
| From Phone Book | 2-20 |
| From Received Calls | 3-10 |
| From Redial | |
| From Scanned Data | 11-2 |
| From Tomo-Den | |
| From Web Page | 6-12 |
| Global Roaming | 3-13 |
| International Calls | |
| Phone Number in Message Text | |
| Video Calls | |
| Vaine Calle | 2.3 |

| Dial Lock | 4-3 |
|------------------------------|-------|
| Dialed Calls | 3-10 |
| Dictionaries | |
| Disp. Call/Receive No | 14-10 |
| Disp. Phone Book Image | |
| Display Design | |
| Display Indicators | |
| Display Light (TV) | |
| Display Mode Settings | |
| Display Operator Name | |
| Display Setting | |
| Display Setting (Video Call) | |
| DL Dictionary | |
| Delete | |
| Download | 2 23 |
| Music | 9-4 |
| S! Appli | |
| S! Contents Store | |
| Templates (Graphic Mail) | 5-19 |
| Downloads (Internet) | 14-19 |
| DPOF Setting | 12-13 |
| Cancel | 12-17 |
| - | |
| E | |
| ECO Mode | 1-22 |
| Edit | |
| Address (Mail Member) | |
| Alarm Settings | |
| | |



| File Name (Data Folder) | 12-16 |
|------------------------------|--------------|
| Folder Name (Bookmark) | 6-14 |
| Folder Name (Data Folder) | 12-15 |
| Folder Name (Messages) | 5-22 |
| Folder Name (Templates) | 2-28 |
| Mail Member List Name | 5-18 |
| Own Dictionary | 2-28 |
| Phone Book Entry | 2-30 |
| Re-entering in T9 Input Mode | 2-16 |
| Still Images | 12-7 |
| Template (Graphic Mail) | 5-19 |
| Templates (Common Phrases) | . 2-14, 2-28 |
| Text | 2-13 |
| URL (Bookmark) | 6-14 |
| Videos | 12-8 |
| View/Record Timer Settings | 8-14 |
| Edit Still Images | 12-7 |
| Brightness | |
| Change Size | |
| Character Stamp | 12-7 |
| Correct Backlight | 12-15 |
| Frame | 12-7 |
| Marker Stamp | 12-7 |
| Refresh Skin Tone | 12-15 |
| Retouch | 12-15 |
| Rotate | 12-15 |
| Trim away | 12-8 |
| Edit Videos | 12-8 |
| Emission OFF Mode | |
| Emotion/Keyword | |
| Emotion-Expressing Mail | |
| Linotion-Expressing Mail | 3-9 |

| Enter URL Delete Records | • |
|-----------------------------------|---------|
| F | |
| Flash Sound Effect | 14-19 |
| Font | 14-4 |
| Font Size (Internet) | 14-19 |
| Font Size (Mail) | 14-17 |
| Font Size (S! Info Channel) | 14-25 |
| Forward (Message) | |
| Forwarding Image | |
| (Phone Book) | 14-12 |
| Frame | |
| | ., 5, , |
| G | |
| Global Roaming | 3-13 |
| Call Japan and Other Countries | 3-13 |
| Call within the Same Country | 3-13 |
| Settings | 14-15 |
| Graphic Mail | |
| Cancel Effects | |
| Create | |
| Create Automatically | |
| Create from a Template | 5-19 |
| Delete Templates | |
| Edit a Template | |
| Enter My Pictograms | |
| | |
| Save Template Special Template | 5-19 |

| Group Calling | 3-19 |
|--------------------------------|-------|
| Group Setting (Phone Book) | 14-12 |
| Ring Tone/Image | |
| н | |
| | 4.5 |
| Handset Parts | |
| Handsfree | |
| Hands-free Switch (Video Call) | |
| Header/Signature14-16, | |
| Headset Mic. Setting | |
| Headset SW to Dial | |
| Headset Usage Setting | 14-11 |
| Holidays & Anniversaries | 11-5 |
| Hyper Clear Voice | 3-17 |
| 1 | |
| son Always Shaw (TV) | 14 21 |
| con Always Show (TV) | |
| cons Setting | |
| llumination | |
| llumination in Talk | 14-13 |
| mage | |
| Capture | |
| Edit | |
| ncoming Call Image | |
| ncoming Message Image | |
| nfo Notice Setting | |
| nfrared | |
| Authentication Password | 13-3 |

| Receive One File | 13-3 |
|-----------------------|------------------|
| Send All Ir Data | 13-3 |
| Send One File | 13-3 |
| Infrared Port | 1-2 |
| Initial Setup | 1-17 |
| Initialize | 14-28 |
| Initialized Browser | 14-19 |
| Input Mode | 14-27 |
| Insertion & Removal | |
| Battery | 1-13 |
| Memory Card | 12-10 |
| USIM Card | 1-12 |
| Int'l Dial Assistance | 14-13 |
| Internal Antenna | 1-2 |
| International Calls | 3-3 |
| Enter " + " | 3-16 |
| Internet | 6-2 |
| Access History | |
| Connect | 6-3 , 6-5 |
| Enter URL | • |
| Home | |
| Page Operations | |
| Quick Search | |
| Reload | |
| Send URL by S! Mail | |
| Settings | |
| Interval/Number | |
| Itsumono-Mail | 5-6 |

| J | | |
|-----------------------|-------|--|
| JAN Code | 11-14 | |
| K | | |
| Keypad Lock | 4-4 | |
| Setting | | |
| Unlock Temporarily | 4-4 | |
| Keypad Sound | 14-10 | |
| | | |
| L | | |
| Language(言語選択) | 14-5 | |
| Life History Viewer | 11-2 | |
| Display setting | 11-19 | |
| Reload | | |
| Lock | | |
| Dial Lock | 4-3 | |
| Keypad Lock | 4-4 | |
| Original Lock | 4-3 | |
| Secure Remote Lock | 4-4 | |
| M | | |
| Mail | 5-2 | |
| Add Folder | 5-22 | |
| Auto-sort | | |
| Delete | | |
| Delete All Reports | 5-21 | |
| Delete Attached Files | | |
| Delete Folder | 5-22 | |
| Delete Read | 5-21 | |

| Draft | 5-23 |
|----------------------------|-------|
| Edit | |
| Filter | 5-24 |
| Folder Lock | 5-14 |
| Forward | |
| Mail Box Lock | |
| Mail Windows | |
| Message Folders | |
| Move | 5-21 |
| Number of Messages | 5-22 |
| Protect | 5-21 |
| Search Mail | |
| Secret Folders | 5-15 |
| Settings | |
| Sort | |
| Sort Folder | |
| Switch Subject Field Views | 5-24 |
| Trash Box | |
| Mail List Disp | 14-17 |
| Mail Member | |
| Add Addresses | 5-6 |
| Delete Addresses | |
| Edit Address | |
| Specify Recipients | |
| Mail Ring Time | |
| Mail Setting | |
| Main Menu | |
| Change Theme | |
| Manner Mode | |
| Manner Mode Set | |
| Original | |



| | Manufacture Number | 14-19 |
|----------|------------------------------|-------|
| | Marker Stamp | 12-7 |
| | Melody Playback | |
| | Playlist | 12-5 |
| | Set Repeat Play | 12-15 |
| | Memory Card | 12-10 |
| | Access Data | |
| | Access Files | |
| | Check & Repair | 12-17 |
| | Check Available Memory Space | 12-16 |
| | Copy Data from Handset | 12-12 |
| | Copy Data to Handset | 12-12 |
| | Delete Data | 12-17 |
| | DPOF Setting | 12-13 |
| | Folders & Files | 15-37 |
| | Format | 12-11 |
| | Insert & Remove | 12-10 |
| | Transfer Music | |
| | Memory Space (Memory info) |) |
| | Bookmarks | 6-14 |
| | Camera | 7-12 |
| | Data Folder | |
| | Memory Card | |
| ➤ | Messages | |
| Ö | Music | |
| ĕ | Number of Saved Pages | |
| 7 | Phone Book | |
| Appendix | S! Appli | |
| _ | Schedules | |
| 15 | Server Mail Memory | |
| | Menu Display Set | 14-7 |
| 15 | -44 | |
| | | |

| Menu List | 15-20 |
|--|-------|
| Message Download | |
| Missed Calls | |
| Modem | |
| Move | |
| Bookmarks | 6-1/ |
| Files | |
| Messages Multitask Activate Another Function Combinations Toggle Functions Music Player Change Skin Playback Windows Repeat Setting Sound Effect My Phone Number | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| My Pictograms | |
| iviy i letograms | |
| N | |
| Net Access (S! Appli) | 14-2 |
| Network Information | |
| Network Password | |
| Noise Reduction | |
| Notify Caller ID | |
| Number of Entries | ۱۱ -د |
| Bookmarks | 6-1 |
| Events | |
| LVCIID | = . |

| Phone Book Entries | |
|-------------------------|-------------|
| NW Search Mode | |
| 0 | |
| One Seg Digital TV | 8-2 |
| Open Inbox Messages | 5-9 |
| Open New Messages | 5-9 |
| Optional Services | 3-14 |
| Original Animation | 12-4 |
| Original Lock | |
| Customize | 4-4 |
| Settings | 4-3 |
| Original Manner Mode | 14-10 |
| Original Menu | |
| Own Dictionary | 2-15 |
| Delete | 2-29 |
| Edit | |
| P | |
| Pause Dial | 3-17, 14-12 |
| PC Connection | 13-5 |
| Access Memory Card Data | 13-5 |
| Packet Transmission | 13-6 |
| USB Mode Setting | 13-5 |
| PC Site Browser | |
| Change Disp. Mode | |
| Windows | 6-5 |

| Phone Book | |
|-------------------------------------|-------|
| Access Entries from Other Functions | 2-2 |
| Change Entry Number | 2-29 |
| Change Font Size | 2-29 |
| Change Index Tab | 2-29 |
| Check Number of Entries | |
| Copy | 2-30 |
| Copy to USIM Card | |
| Create Entries | |
| Create Entries from Other Functions | 2-19 |
| Delete Entries | 2-3 |
| Delete Items | 2-3 |
| Dial | 2-20 |
| Edit an Entry | 2-30 |
| Group Setting | 14-12 |
| Restrictions | 2-2 |
| Ring Tone/Image | 2-2 |
| S! Addressbook Back-up | 2-24 |
| Save from Scanned Data | |
| Search | |
| Send Entries by S! Mail | 2-30 |
| Set Incoming Image | 2-19 |
| Set Preferred Search Method | |
| Set Secret | |
| Sort | |
| PIN Lock & Cancellation (PUK) | 1-1 |
| PIN1/PIN2 | 1-1 |
| Change PIN1/PIN2 | 4-2 |
| PIN1 Code Entry Set | 4-2 |
| Place Calls on Hold | |

| Play | |
|-------------------------|-------|
| Answering Machine | 3-5 |
| Music | 9-5 |
| Playlist | 9-6 |
| Recorded Program | |
| Voice Announce | |
| Voice Mail | |
| Voice Memo | 3-5 |
| Playlist (Songs) | |
| Add Music | |
| Cancel Playlist Songs | 9-10 |
| Create | |
| Delete | 9-10 |
| Play | |
| Sort Playlist | 9-10 |
| PLMN Setting | |
| Power On/Off | 1-17 |
| Prefix Numbers | |
| Prefix Setting | |
| Privacy Angle | |
| Program Guide | |
| Program Guide | 8-t |
| Q OR Code | |
| QR Code | 11-14 |
| Quality Alarm | |
| Quick Info Setting | |
| Quick Search5-23, 6-13, | |
| | |
| Quick Silent | 14-3 |

| Read Out Message | 5-20 |
|--------------------------------------|-------|
| Read Out Setting | |
| Receive & Open Messages | |
| Manually Retrieve S! Mail Messages . | |
| Open New Messages | 5-9 |
| Opening Inbox Messages | 5-9 |
| Read Out Message | |
| Reply | 5-10 |
| Report Spam | |
| Retrieve Complete S! Mail | 5-20 |
| Save Attachments | 5-15 |
| Use Mail List | |
| Received Addresses | 5-22 |
| Received Calls | 3-10 |
| Receiving Setting | 14-17 |
| Reconnect Signal | |
| Record at Low Battery | 14-22 |
| Record Sound | |
| Sound without Video (Voice Mode) | 7-10 |
| Voice Announce | 14-10 |
| Voice Memo3-4 | |
| Record Timer | |
| Record Videos | |
| Auto Timer | |
| Chance Capture | 7-10 |
| Voice Mode | |
| Redial | |
| | |

| 4 | E |
|---|--------------|
| | 3 -45 |

Index

| Register S! Quick News Contents Reject Calls w/o Caller ID Reject Unknown Remote Control Numbers Reply to Messages Report Spam Setting | 4-5 4-5 14-21 5-10 |
|--|-----------------------------|
| Reset | 14 22 |
| Channel Settings | 14-22 |
| (Data Broadcasts) | 14-22 |
| Desktop Icons | |
| Folder Name (Common Phrases) | |
| Handset | 14-28 |
| Holidays | |
| Mail Member List Name | |
| Mail Settings | 14-17 |
| Memory Card | |
| My Phone Number | |
| Original Menu | |
| PC Site Browser Settings | |
| S! Appli Settings | |
| S! Quick News Contents | |
| SMS Center Selection | |
| Total Call Cost Total Call Time | |
| | |
| TV Settings | |
| Reset (S! Appli) | |
| Reset (Yahoo! Keitai) | |
| Meser (Tarioo: Nertal) | 17-13 |

| Reset Channel Setting Reset Mail Settings Reset PC Site Brw. Set Reset Settings Reset Storage Area (TV) | 14-17 14-19 14-28 |
|---|-------------------------|
| Reset Total Cost | |
| Reset Total Duration | |
| Reset TV Settings | |
| Retrieve New | 5-20 |
| Ring Volume | 14-8 |
| S | |
| 5! Addressbook Back-up | 2-24 |
| Auto Synchronize | 14-12 |
| Check Settings | |
| Check Synchronize Log | |
| Delete Synchronize Log | |
| Synchronization Type | |
| Use | |
| 5! Appli | |
| Activate | |
| Delete | |
| Download | |
| Settings | |
| S! Contents Store | |
| ፩! Info Channel | |
| Check Latest Information | |
| Get Latest Contents | |
| Save File | 10-6 |

| Settings | 14-25 |
|---------------------------|-------|
| Subscribe for Service | |
| Weather Indicators | |
| ! Information Notif | |
| ! Quick News | |
| Check Updated Information | |
| Delete Registered News | |
| Manually Update | |
| Register News | |
| Settings | |
| ave | |
| Bookmarks | 6-9 |
| Events | |
| Holidays & Anniversaries | |
| Itsumono-Mail | |
| Mail Member | |
| Own Dictionary | |
| Phone Book Entries | |
| S! Quick News | |
| Saved Pages | 6-9 |
| Tasks | |
| Templates | |
| Text Memos | 11-9 |
| Tomo-Den | |
| TV Links | 8-13 |
| aved Pages | 6-9 |
| Delete | |
| Number of Pages | |
| Open | |
| Protect | 6-15 |
| Save | 6-9 |

| Schedule (Events) | 11-4 |
|------------------------------|---------------|
| Add Holidays | 11-5 |
| Check | 11-5 |
| Copy | 11-19 |
| Delete | . 11-6, 11-19 |
| Edit | 11-19 |
| Icon Display | 11-19 |
| Number of Schedules | 11-19 |
| Reset Holiday | 11-19 |
| Save | |
| Save a Text Memo to Schedule | 11-20 |
| Windows | |
| Screen Effect | 14-5 |
| Script Settings | 14-20 |
| Scroll (Internet) | 14-19 |
| Scroll (Mail) | |
| Search | |
| Messages in a Folder | 5-24 |
| Phone Book | 2-20 |
| Songs | 9-10 |
| Secret Data | |
| Phone Book Entries | 2-23 |
| Schedule | 11-5 |
| Secret Data Only Mode | 4-6 |
| Secret Folders | 4-6 |
| Secret Mode | 4-6 |
| Secure Remote Lock | 4-4 |
| Security Code | 1-20 |
| Select Image (Video Call) | 14-14 |
| Select Microphone | |
| | |

| Send Location Info | 14-20 |
|-------------------------|-------|
| Send Messages | 5-3 |
| Request Delivery Report | |
| Send Referer | |
| Sent Addresses | |
| Server Mail | |
| Delete | |
| Forward | |
| List Setting | |
| Mail List | |
| Set Hold Tone | |
| Set Image Disp. | |
| (S! Quick News) | 14-25 |
| Set Main Time | |
| Set Max Cost Limit | |
| Set Mute Seconds | |
| Set Ringtone | |
| From Data Folder | |
| Set Sub Clock | |
| Setting when Folded | |
| Setting when Opened | |
| Shoot Framed Images | |
| Shooting | |
| Auto Timer | 7-10 |
| Chance Capture | |
| Continuous Shooting | 7-9 |
| Frame | |
| Still Images | |
| Videos | |

| Shortcut-key Setting | 14-27 |
|----------------------|-------|
| Shutter Sound | |
| Side Key Guard | |
| | |
| Simple Menu | 2-26 |
| SMS | |
| Receive | |
| Send | |
| SMS Center Selection | |
| SMS Settings | |
| Software Update | 15-4 |
| Songs | |
| Download | 9-4 |
| Memory Info | 9-10 |
| Play | |
| Playlist | |
| Resume Play | |
| Search | |
| Set as Ringtone | |
| Sort | |
| Transfer From PC | |
| Sort (Change Order) | |
| Booked Programs | 8-15 |
| Desktop Icons | |
| Files | |
| Folders (Bookmark) | |
| Folders (Mail) | |
| Messages | |
| Original Menu Items | |
| Playlist Songs | |
| Songs | |



| Tasks | 11-20 |
|---------------------------------------|-------|
| Sound/Vib Settings | 14-24 |
| Special Template | 5-5 |
| Specifications | 15-34 |
| Standby Setting | |
| (Weather Indicators) | 14-26 |
| Standby Settings | |
| (S! Quick News) | 14-25 |
| Start Attachment (auto) | 14-17 |
| Stereo Earphone Conversion | |
| Cable | |
| Storage Location (Camera) | 14-23 |
| Style Mode Settings | 14-3 |
| Sub-address Setting | 14-12 |
| Sub-display | 1-8 |
| Sub-display Settings | |
| Subtitles | 14-21 |
| _ | |
| т | |
| T9 Change Mode | 14-27 |
| T9 Input Mode | 2-16 |
| Templates (Common Phrases) | |
| Delete | |
| Edit2-14 | |
| Insert | |
| Text Entry | |
| 2-touch Mode5-touch Mode | |
| Alphanumerics, Numbers & Katakana | |
| / apriariamenes, realibers & Ratakana | 15 |

| Character Entry Modes | |
|--------------------------------|-------|
| Common Phrases (Templates) . | 2-13 |
| Copy | 2-14 |
| Correction | 2-13 |
| Cut | |
| Dakuten (*) & Handakuten (*) | 2-13 |
| Deletion | 2-13 |
| Emoticons | 2-13 |
| Key Assignments | 15-10 |
| Kuten Code List | 15-13 |
| Kuten Codes | 2-28 |
| Line Feed | 2-27 |
| Lower Case | 2-13 |
| Lower Case & Upper Case | 2-27 |
| Overwrite & Insert Modes | |
| Paste | |
| Pictographs | 2-13 |
| Quote Data | 2-28 |
| Settings | 14-2 |
| Single-byte & Double-byte | 2-2 |
| Space | 2-2 |
| Split Windows | 2-1 |
| Symbols | 2-13 |
| T9 Input Mode | |
| Text Entry Window | 2-10 |
| Text Input Methods | 2-1 |
| Use Dictionary | 2-2 |
| Word Prediction | 2-1 |
| ext Memo | |
| Check Information | |
| Delete | |
| | |

| Save | 11-9 |
|-------------------------|-------|
| Save from Scanned Data | 11-22 |
| Sort | |
| Text Reader | 11-16 |
| Check Scanned Text | 11-17 |
| Delete Scanned Data | |
| Edit Scanned Text | 11-21 |
| NEGA/POSI Mode | 11-21 |
| Scan | 11-17 |
| Scan Modes | 11-16 |
| Scan Window | 11-16 |
| To Do List (Tasks) | 11-7 |
| Change Order | 11-20 |
| Check | 11-7 |
| Delete11-8, | |
| Save | 11-7 |
| Set Status | 11-20 |
| Tomo-Den | 3-12 |
| Cancel Entries | 3-18 |
| Change Entry Image | |
| Dial | 3-12 |
| Save Entries | |
| Send S! Mail/SMS | |
| Trim away (Still Image) | 12-8 |
| Troubleshooting | |
| TV | |
| Brightness | 8-12 |
| Channel Settings | |
| Data Broadcasts | |
| Main/Sub Sound | |
| Program Guide | 8-6 |

| Program Info Record Record Timer Settings Sound Switch View Timer Watch | 8-8 14-21 8-12 8-10 |
|---|---|
| Windows | |
| TV Link | |
| Delete | 8-13 |
| Number of TV Links | |
| Save | 8-13 |
| Show Details | 8-13 |
| TV Power Saving | 14-21 |
| TV Sound While Closed | |
| | |
| U | |
| U Update | |
| | 8-12 |
| Update Data Broadcast | |
| Update Data Broadcast Life History Viewer S! Quick News List | 11-19 |
| Update Data Broadcast Life History Viewer | 11-19 |
| Update Data Broadcast Life History Viewer S! Quick News List | 11-19 10-6 .5-10 , 5-20 |
| Update Data Broadcast Life History Viewer S! Quick News List Server Mail List | 11-19 10-6 .5-10, 5-20 6-12 |
| Update Data Broadcast Life History Viewer S! Quick News List Server Mail List Web Page | 11-19 10-6 .5-10, 5-20 6-12 13-5 |
| Update Data Broadcast Life History Viewer S! Quick News List Server Mail List Web Page USB Mode Setting | 11-19 10-6 .5-10, 5-20 6-12 13-5 1-10 |
| Update Data Broadcast | 11-19 10-6 5-10, 5-20 6-12 13-5 1-10 .2-23, 2-30 5-22 |
| Update Data Broadcast | 11-19 10-6 .5-10, 5-20 6-12 13-5 1-10 .2-23, 2-30 5-22 5-22 |
| Update Data Broadcast | 11-19 10-6 .5-10, 5-20 6-12 13-5 1-10 .2-23, 2-30 5-22 5-22 |

| PINs | 1-11 |
|--------------------------|-------|
| V | |
| Vibrator | 14-9 |
| Video Call | 3-7 |
| Brightness | 3-17 |
| Color Mode Set | |
| Display Light | 3-17 |
| Hyper Clear Voice | 3-17 |
| Settings | 14-14 |
| Visual Prefer | 3-17 |
| White Balance | |
| Windows | 3-7 |
| Video Player | 9-2 |
| Change Playback Speed | |
| Help | 9-9 |
| Playback Windows | |
| Set Image Display Size | |
| Sound Effect | |
| Video Info | 9-9 |
| Videos | |
| Playlist | 12-5 |
| View Timer | 8-10 |
| Viewer Settings | 14-5 |
| Voice Announce | 14-10 |
| Voice Call | 3-3 |
| Hyper Clear Voice | 3-17 |
| Send Touch Tones | |
| Voice Mail | |
| Missed Call Notification | 3-15 |

| Play Messages |
|--|
| W |
| Wallpaper (Stand-by Display) 14- Image in Data Folder |
| Recorded Video |
| Video in Data Folder |
| Warranty15-5 Weather Indicators10- |
| Indicator List |
| Weather Notif14-2 |
| Weather Update |
| Υ |
| Yahoo! Keitai6- Switch to PC6-1 |

Warranty & After Sales Service

Warranty

A warranty card is included with 840N.

- Check that the store name and purchase date sections have been filled correctly.
- Read the card carefully and store it in a safe place.
- See the card for the warranty period.

After Sales Service

Refer to "Troubleshooting" (P. 15-6) before submitting your handset for repair.

If problems still persist, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, Customer Assistance of your area (P. 15-51), or consult with your nearest SoftBank shop.

Provide us with detailed information of your problems.

- Repair within the warranty period is carried out in accordance with the conditions of the warranty.
- Repair after the warranty period is carried out if possible, and the owner of handset is responsible for any repair costs.

Note

- SoftBank assumes no responsibility for any damages incurred by you or third parties for failed calls, etc. due to failure or malfunction of this product.
- Data and settings you saved may be lost or altered as a result of failure or repair of handset. It is recommended that you keep a backup copy of important data (e.g. Phone Book entries, image and sound files).
 SoftBank assumes no responsibility for any damages due to the loss or alteration of handset data.
- Disassembling or modifying handset may constitute a violation of Radio Law. Your handset will not be accepted for repairs if it has been modified.

Tip

 For information on after sales service, contact your nearest SoftBank shop or SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P. 15-51). Customer service

If you have any questions about SoftBank handsets or services, call General Information. For repairs, call Customer Assistance.

■ SoftBank Mobile Customer Center

General Information

From SoftBank handsets
From landlines

157 (toll-free)
0088-21-2000 (toll-free)
0800-919-0157 (toll-free)

Customer Assistance

From SoftBank handsets 113 (toll-free)
From landlines 0088-240-113 (toll-free)

From IP phones, call these numbers.

| Eastern Japan | 022-380-4380 (toll call) | Tokai | 052-388-2002 (toll call) |
|---------------|-------------------------------|--------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| Kansai | I ()6-7669-()18() (foll call) | Chugoku, Shikoku, Kyushu, Okinawa | 092-687-0010 (toll call) |

■ SoftBank Mobile Global Call Center

For assistance (lost/stolen handsets, etc.) from outside Japan, call: +81-3-5351-3491 (Toll-free from a SoftBank handset)

SoftBank 840N User Guide

September 2010, First Edition

SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.

For additional information, please visit a SoftBank Shop.

Model: SoftBank 840N

Manufacturer: NEC CASIO Mobile Communications, Ltd.